ALFA ROMEO

GIULIA

OWNER HANDBOOK

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dear Customer,

We would like to congratulate and thank you for choosing an Alfa Romeo.

We have written this handbook to help you get to know all the features of your vehicle and use it in the best possible way. This vehicle is intended for daily use as well as for specific uses. Please take your time to familiarise with all the dynamic features of your car.

Here you will find information, advice and important warnings regarding use of your vehicle and how to achieve the best performance from the technical features of your Alfa Romeo.

You are advised to read it right through before taking to the road for the first time, to become familiar with the controls and above all with those concerning brakes, steering and gearbox; at the same time, you can understand the vehicle behaviour on different road surfaces.

This document also provides a description of special features and tips, as well as essential information for the safe driving, care and maintenance of your Alfa Romeo over time.

After reading it, you are advised to keep the handbook inside the vehicle, for an easy reference and for making sure it remains on board the vehicle should it be sold.

In the attached Warranty Booklet you will also find the description of the Services that Alfa Romeo offers to its customers, the Warranty Certificate and the detail of the terms and conditions for maintaining its validity.

We are sure that these will help you to get in touch with and appreciate your new car and the service provided by the people at Alfa Romeo.

Enjoy reading. Happy motoring!

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

READ THIS CAREFULLY

REFUELLING

Do not use petrol containing methanol or ethanol E85. Using these mixtures may cause misfiring and driving issues, as well as damage vital components of the supply system.
For further details on the use of the correct fuel see the "Refuelling the vehicle" paragraph in the "Starting and driving" chapter.

STARTING THE ENGINE

Versions with mechanical gearbox
Make sure the electric parking brake is engaged, press the clutch pedal and then press the ignition button briefly.
Versions with automatic transmission
Make sure that the electric parking brake is engaged and that the transmission is in P (Park) or N (Neutral), press the brake pedal and then press the ignition device button.

PARKING ON FLAMMABLE MATERIAL

The catalytic converter develops high temperatures during operation. Do not park the car on grass, dry leaves, pine needles or other flammable material: fire hazard.

RESPECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

The vehicle is fitted with a system that carries out a continuous diagnosis of the emission-related components in order to help protect the environment.

ELECTRICAL ACCESSORIES

If, after buying the vehicle, you decide to add electrical accessories (with the risk of gradually draining the battery), contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership. They can calculate the overall electrical requirement and check that the vehicle's electric system can support the required load.

SCHEDULED SERVICING

Correct maintenance of the car is essential for ensuring that it maintains its performance and its safety features, its environmental friendliness and low running costs for a long time to come.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

VEHICLE CHANGES / ALTERATIONS

IMPORTANT Any change or alteration of the vehicle might seriously affect its safety and road holding, thus causing accidents, in which the occupants could even be fatally injured.

IMPORTANT The use of these devices inside the passenger compartment (without an external aerial) may cause the electrical systems to malfunction. This could compromise the safety of the vehicle in addition to constituting a potential hazard for passengers' health.

IMPORTANT If mobile phones/laptops/smartphones/tablets are inside the vehicle and/or close to the electronic key, reduced performance of the Keyless Start system may occur.

ACCESSORIES PURCHASED BY THE OWNER

If after buying the vehicle, you decide to install electrical accessories that require a permanent electrical supply (e.g. radio, satellite anti-theft system, etc.) or accessories that in any case burden the electrical supply, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership, whose personnel will check whether the vehicles's electrical system is able to withstand the load required, or whether it needs to be integrated with a more powerful battery.

IMPORTANT Take care when fitting additional spoilers, alloy wheel rims or non-standard wheel hubs: they could reduce the ventilation of the brakes and affect efficiency under sharp, repeated braking or on long descents. Make sure that nothing obstructs the pedal stroke (mats, etc.).

Alfa Romeo S.p.A. shall not be liable for damage caused by the installation of accessories either not supplied or recommended by Alfa Romeo S.p.A. and/or not installed in compliance with the provided instructions.

INSTALLING ELECTRICAL/ELECTRONIC DEVICES

Electrical and electronic devices installed after buying the car in the context of after-sales service must carry the following label e CE:

Alfa Romeo S.p.A. authorises the installation of transceivers provided that installation is carried out at a specialised centre, in a workmanlike fashion and in compliance with manufacturer's specifications.

IMPORTANT Traffic police may not allow the vehicle on the road if devices have been installed which modify the features of the vehicle. This may also cause invalidation of warranty in relation to faults caused by the change either directly or indirectly related to it.

Alfa Romeo S.p.A. shall not be liable for damage caused by the installation of accessories either not supplied or recommended by Alfa Romeo S.p.A. and/or not installed in compliance with the provided instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RADIO TRANSMITTERS AND MOBILE PHONES

Radio transmitter equipment (vehicle mobile phones, CB radios, amateur radio etc.) cannot be used inside the vehicle unless a separate aerial is mounted externally.

Transmission and reception of these devices may be affected by the shielding effect of the vehicle body. As far as the use of EC-approved mobile phones is concerned (GSM, GPRS, UMTS, LTE), follow the usage instructions provided by the mobile phone Manufacturer.

IMPORTANT The use of these devices inside the passenger compartment (without an external aerial) may cause the electrical systems to malfunction. This could compromise the safety of the car in addition to constituting a potential hazard for passengers' health.

IMPORTANT If mobile phones/laptops/smartphones/tablets are inside the car and/or close to the electronic key, a reduced performance of the Passive Entry/Keyless Start system may occur.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USE OF THE OWNER HANDBOOK

OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

Each time direction instructions (left/right or forwards/backwards) about the vehicle are given, these must be understood as regarding an occupant in the driver's seat. Special cases not complying with this rule will be specified as appropriate in the text.

The figures in the Owner Handbook are provided by way of example only: this might imply that some details of the image do not correspond to the actual arrangement of your vehicle. In addition, the Handbook has been conceived considering vehicles with steering wheel on the left side; it is therefore possible that on vehicles with steering wheel on the right side, the position or construction of some controls is not exactly mirror-like with respect to the figure.

To identify the chapter with the information needed you can consult the index at the end of this Owner Handbook.

Chapters can be rapidly identified with dedicated graphic tabs, at the side of each odd page. A few pages further there is a key for getting to know the chapter order and the relevant symbols in the tabs. There is in any case a textual indication of the current chapter at the side of each even page.

WARNINGS AND PRECAUTIONS

While reading this Owner Handbook you will find a series of **WARNINGS** to prevent procedures that could damage your vehicle.

There are also **PRECAUTIONS** that must be carefully followed to prevent incorrect use of the components of the vehicle, which could cause accidents or injuries.

Therefore all **WARNINGS** and **PRECAUTIONS** must always be carefully followed.

WARNINGS and **PRECAUTIONS** are recalled in the text with the following symbols:

personal safety;

vehicle safety;

environmental protection.

NOTE These symbols, when necessary, are indicated besides the title or at the end of the line and are followed by a number. That number recalls the corresponding warning at the end of the relevant section.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IMPORTANT

This Owner Handbook describes all vehicle versions. Optional contents, equipment meant for specific Markets or particular versions are not identified as such in the text: you need to consider only the information related to the version you own. Any content introduced throughout the production of the model, outside the specific request of options at the time of purchase, will be identified with the wording *(where provided)*.

All data contained in this publication are intended to help you use your vehicle in the best possible way. Alfa Romeo S.p.A. aims at a constant improvement of the vehicles produced. For this reason it reserves the right to make changes to the model described for technical and/or commercial reasons.

For further information, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SYMBOLS

Some car components have coloured labels whose symbols indicate precautions to be observed when using this component. See below for a brief description of each symbol summarising the contents herein. Always take great care to all warnings herein.

READ THE USER'S MANUAL

DO NOT TOUCH WITH HANDS

IT CAN START AUTOMATICALLY ALSO WITH ENGINE OFF

PROTECT YOUR EYES

DO NOT OPEN THE CAP WHEN THE ENGINE IS HOT

DO NOT OPEN: HIGH PRESSURE GAS

KEEP CHILDREN AT A DISTANCE

BURSTING

MOVING PARTS KEEP PARTS OF YOUR BODY AND CLOTHES AWAY

DO NOT APPROACH FLAMES

CORROSIVE LIQUID

HIGH VOLTAGE

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This page is intentionally left blank

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

GRAPHICAL INDEX

KNOWING YOUR CAR

KNOWING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL

SAFETY

STARTING AND DRIVING

IN AN EMERGENCY

SERVICING AND CARE

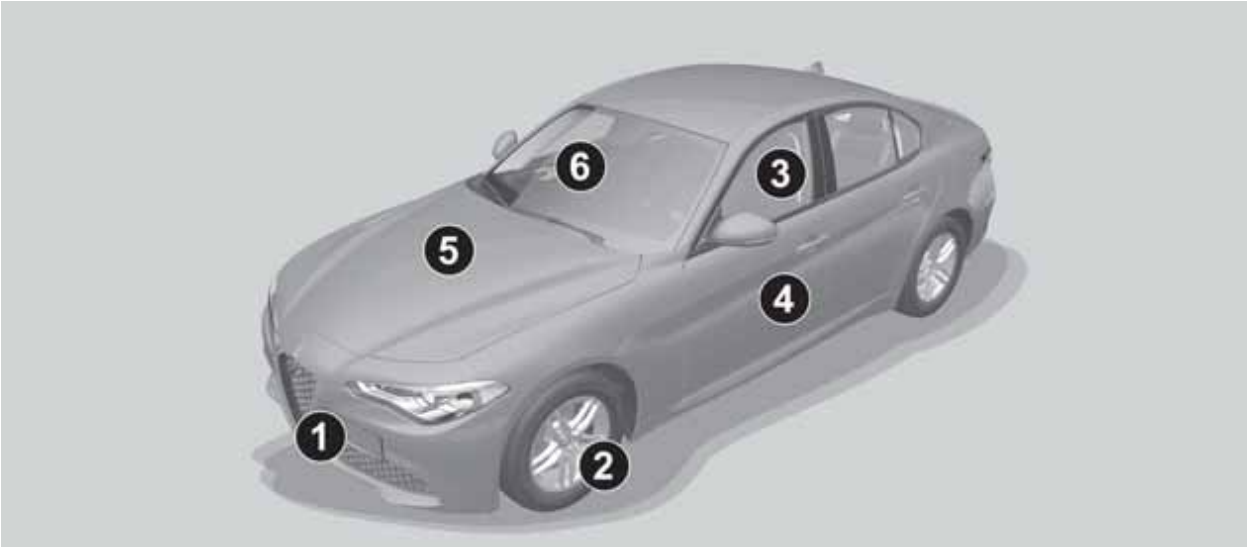
TECHNICAL DATA

INDEX

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FRONT VIEW



I

03016S0001EM

❶ HEADLIGHTS
❒ Types of bulbs 183
❒ Bulb replacement 185

❷ WHEELS
❒ Rims and tyres provided 253
❒ Tyre pressure 255
❒ Tire Repair Kit 195

❸ DOOR MIRRORS
❒ Adjustment 37

❹ DOORS
❒ Central opening/closing 25

❺ CHECKING LEVELS
❒ Checking levels 218

❻ WINDSCREEN WIPERS
❒ Operation 45

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FRONT VIEW (QUADRIFOGLIO VERSION)

2 03016S0002EM

❶ HEADLIGHTS
❒ Types of bulbs 183
❒ Bulb replacement 185

❷ WHEELS
❒ Rims and tyres 253
❒ Tyre pressure 255
❒ Tire Repair Kit 195

❸ DOOR MIRRORS
❒ Adjustment 37

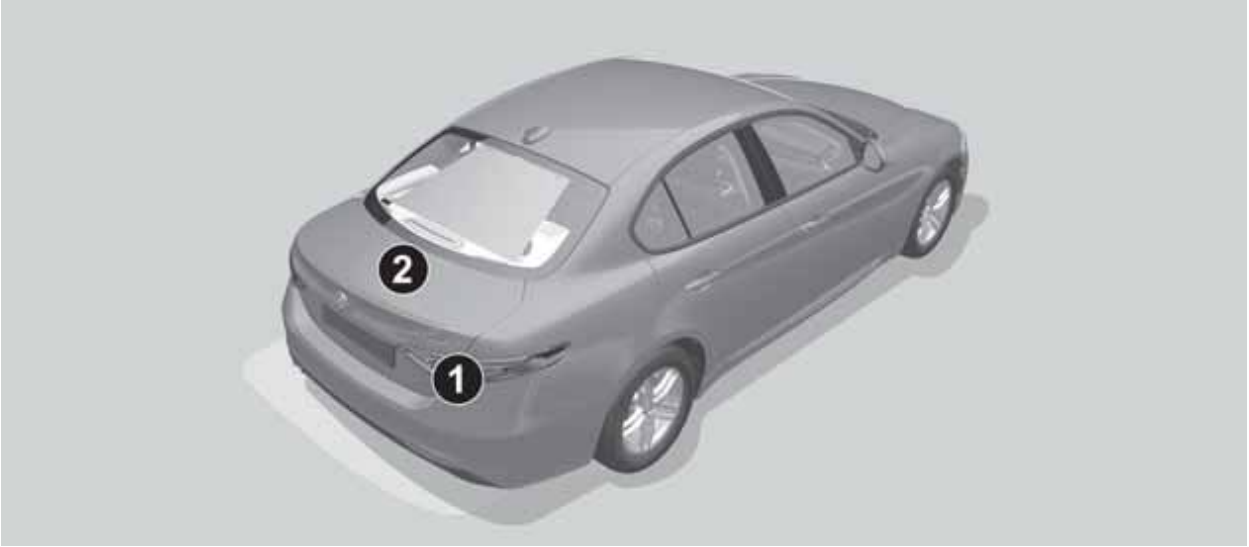
❹ DOORS
❒ Central opening/closing 25

❺ CHECKING LEVELS
❒ Checking levels 218

❻ WINDSCREEN WIPERS
❒ Operation 45

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REAR VIEW



3 03026S0001EM

❶ REAR LIGHTS
❒ External lights 38

❷ BOOT
❒ Opening/closing 57

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REAR VIEW (QUADRIFOGLIO VERSION)

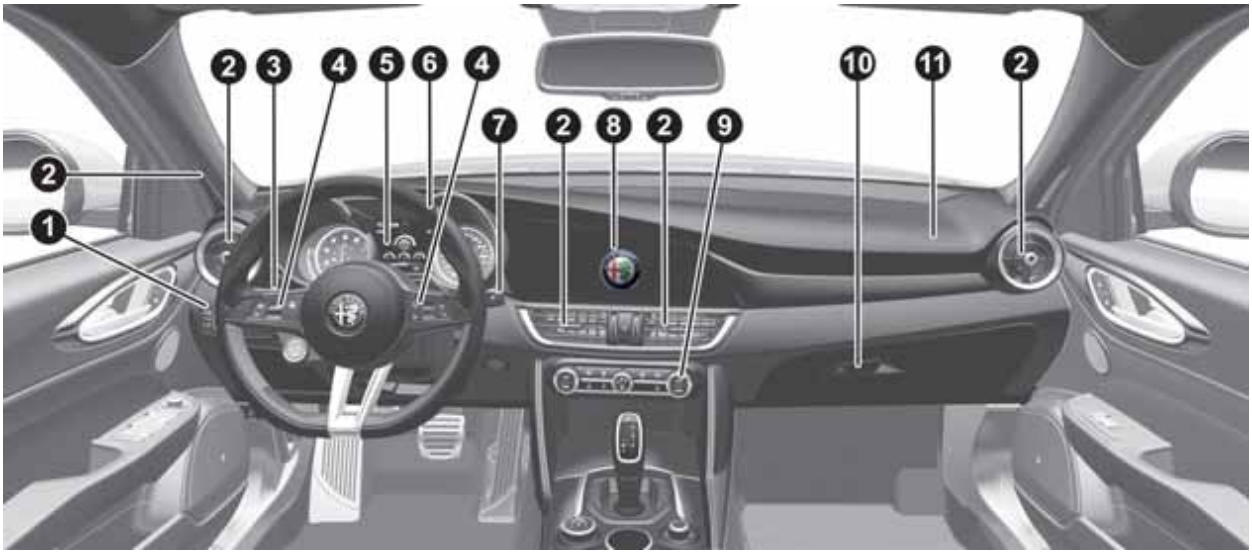
4 03026S0002EM

❶ REAR LIGHTS
❒ External lights 38

❷ BOOT
❒ Opening/closing 57

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INSTRUMENT PANEL



5 03036S0001EM

❶ LIGHT SWITCH
❒ External lights 38

❷ AIR DIFFUSERS
❒ Climate control 47

❸ LEFT STALK
❒ Main beam headlights 40
❒ Direction indicators 41

❹ CONTROLS ON STEERING WHEEL
❒ Cruise Control 155

❺ INSTRUMENT PANEL
❒ Control panel and on-board instruments 66

❻ STEERING WHEEL
❒ Adjustments 35
❒ Front airbags 131

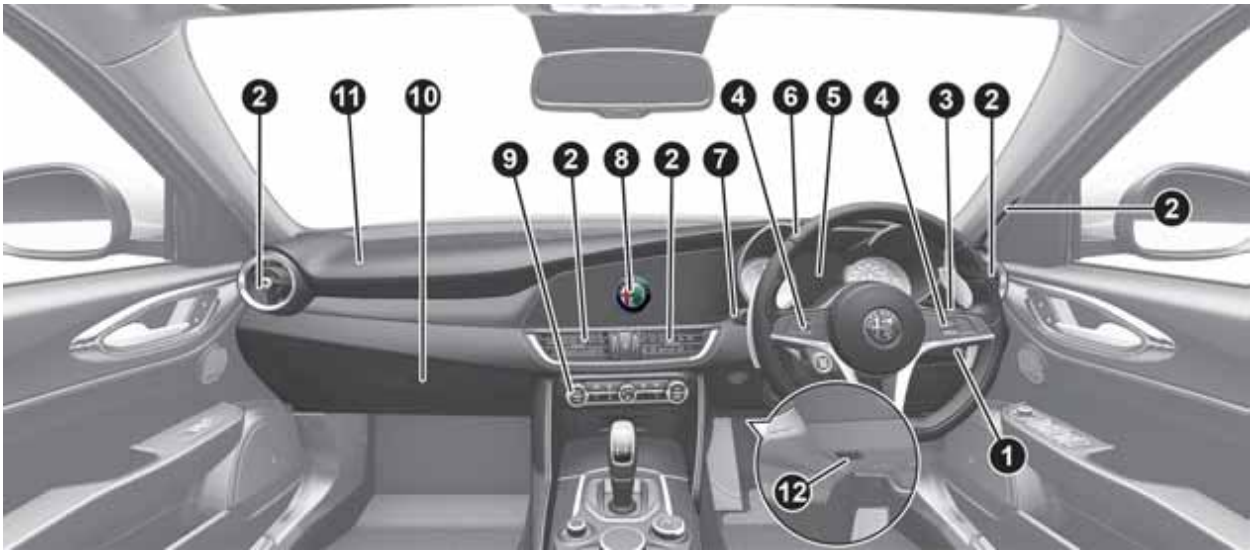
❼ RIGHT STALK
❒ Window washing. 45

❽ CONNECT
❾ CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM
❒ Automatic dual-zone climate control system 48

❿ GLOVE COMPARTMENT 59
⓫ PASSENGER-SIDE AIR BAG 134

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RIGHT HAND DRIVE VERSION



6 03036S0020EM

1. Light switch; 2. Air diffusers; 3. Left stalk; 4. Steering wheel controls; 5. Instrument panel; 6. Steering wheel; 7. Right stalk; 8. Connect; 9. Automatic dual-zone climate control system; 10. Glove compartment; 11. Passenger side air bag; 12. Bonnet release lever.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

VEHICLE INTERIOR

7 03046S0001EM

❶ SEATS
❒ Adjustments 30

❷ ELECTRIC WINDOWS / ELECTRIC DOOR MIRRORS
❒ Electric windows 54
❒ Electric door mirrors control 37

❸ GEARBOX/TRANSMISSION
❒ Using the transmission 143
❒ Using the manual gearbox 143

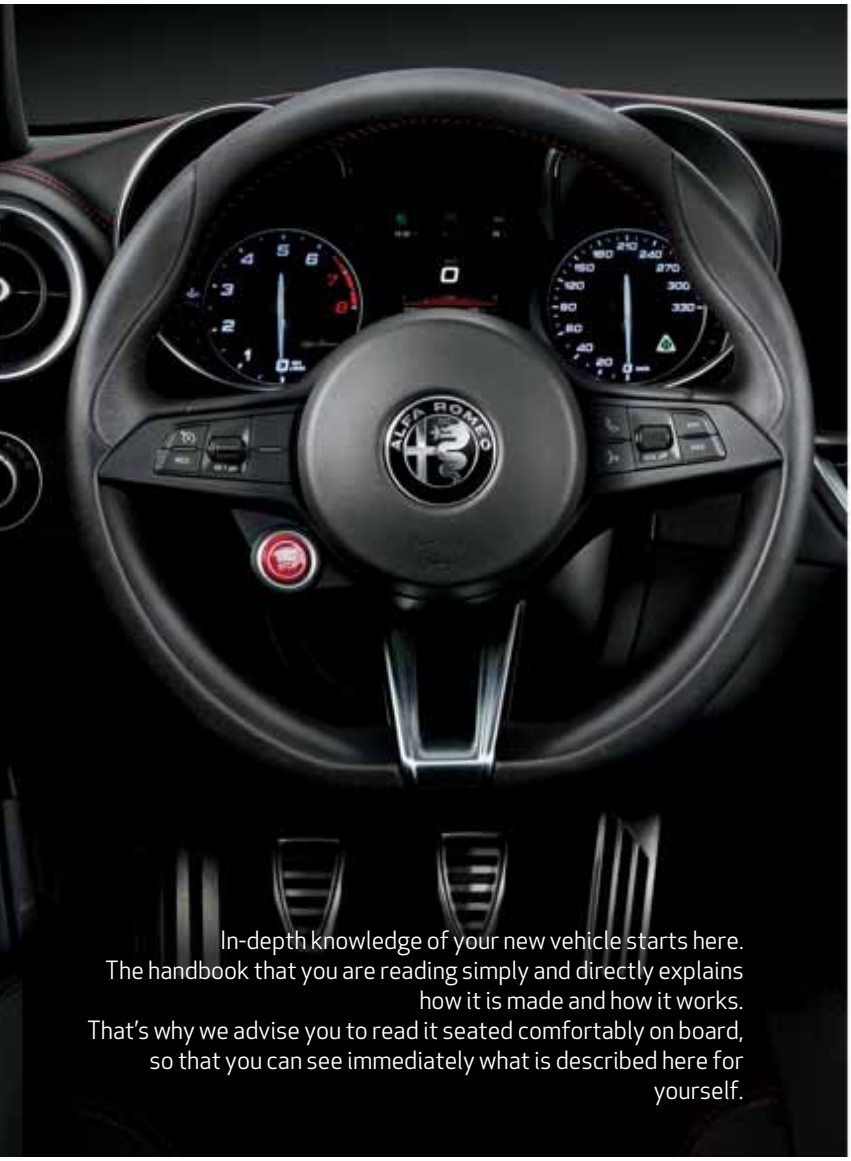
❹ HAZARD WARNING LIGHTS
❒ Operation 182

❺ "Alfa DNA™ Pro" SYSTEM
❒ Operation 148

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This page is intentionally left blank

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



In-depth knowledge of your new vehicle starts here.
The handbook that you are reading simply and directly explains how it is made and how it works.
That's why we advise you to read it seated comfortably on board, so that you can see immediately what is described here for yourself.

KNOWING YOUR CAR

THE KEYS 20
IGNITION DEVICE 22
ENGINE IMMOBILIZER 23
ALARM SYSTEM. 24
DOORS. 25
SEATS 30
HEADRESTS 34
STEERING WHEEL. 35
REAR VIEW MIRRORS 36
EXTERNAL LIGHTS 38
INTERIOR LIGHTS 42
WINDSCREEN WIPER. 45
CLIMATE CONTROL 47
WINDOW WINDERS 54
ELECTRIC SUNROOF 55
BONNET 56
LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT 57
INTERIOR FITTINGS. 59
ROOF RACK/SKI RACK 61
ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION SYSTEMS 62
ACTIVE AERODYNAMICS 63

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

THE KEYS

ELECTRONIC KEY

1)

The vehicle is equipped with an electronic key with the Keyless Start fig. 8 function, provided in duplicate.

8 0401650010EM

OPERATION

Door and boot unlock

Briefly press the button: unlocking of doors and boot, timed switching-on of internal lights and single flashing of direction indicators (if activated from the Connect system).

When the function is available, press and release the unlock button on the remote control once only to unlock the driver side front door or twice within 1 second to unlock all doors and the boot.

It is however possible to change the current setting through the Connect system menu, so that the system unlocks:

❒ all doors on the first press of the remote control button;

❒ only the driver door on the first press of the remote control button (where provided);

❒ the boot, "independently" or "with doors".

Moreover, from the Connect system you can activate or deactivate the flashing of the direction indicators upon locking/unlocking the doors and activate the "courtesy light" function (dipped beam headlights and direction indicators switch on) upon unlocking the doors. For further information, see paragraph "Settings" in the "Connect" booklet.

The doors can always be unlocked by putting the metal insert inside the driver side door lock.

Door and boot lock

Briefly press the button: locking of doors and boot, timed switching-off of internal lights and double flashing of direction indicators (if activated from Connect system).

If one or more doors are open, the doors are locked and this is indicated by a rapid flashing of the direction indicators (where provided). The doors prepare for locking, which is active from the moment they are closed. The doors will unlock again only if the key presence is detected inside the passenger compartment.

The doors can always be locked by putting the metal insert inside the driver side door lock.

Automatic window opening/closing function

(where provided)

Prolonged pressing of button : all windows open.

Prolonged pressing of button : all windows closed.

Boot opening

Rapidly press the button twice to open the boot remotely. The direction indicators will flash twice to indicate that the boot has been opened.

REPLACING THE ELECTRONIC KEY BATTERY

1)

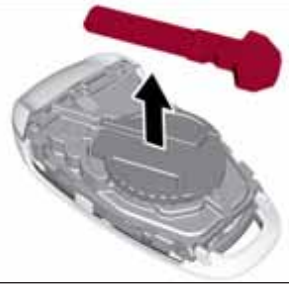
To replace the battery, proceed as follows:

❒ Pressing in the points indicated in fig. 9, extract the cover pulling downwards.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

9 04016S0002EM

❒ Remove the key insert fig. 10 from its housing.



10 04016S0003EM

❒ Remove the battery plug fig. 11 rotating it in counter-clockwise.

11 04016S0004EM

❒ Remove the battery from its slot fig. 12 and replace it with a new one of the same type.

12 04016S0005EM

Proceed in reverse order to reassemble the key.

IMPORTANT The battery replacement operation must be carried out with care, in order not to damage the electronic key.

REQUEST FOR ADDITIONAL KEYS

The system can recognise up to 8 keys with remote control.

To guarantee that the engine starts and the vehicle operates correctly, use only electronic keys specifically coded for the vehicle's electronics.

If an electronic key is coded for a vehicle, it cannot be used on any other vehicle.

Duplicating keys

Should a new key with remote control or a new electronic key be necessary, go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership, taking an ID document and the vehicle ownership documents.

IMPORTANT

1) *The electronic components inside the key may be damaged if the key is subjected to strong shocks. In order to ensure complete efficiency of the electronic devices inside the key, it should never be exposed to direct sunlight.*

IMPORTANT

1) *Used batteries may be harmful to the environment if not disposed of correctly. They must be disposed of as specified by law in the special containers or taken to an Alfa Romeo Dealership, which will take care of their disposal.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IGNITION DEVICE

OPERATION

1) 2) 3) 4) 5)

To activate the ignition device fig. 13 the electronic key must be inside the passenger compartment.

13 04026S0001EM

The ignition device has the following possible states:

❒ STOP: engine off, steering locked. Some electrical devices (e.g. central door locking system, alarm, etc.) are still available;

❒ ON (button pressed only): all electrical devices are available. This state can be entered by pressing the ignition device button once, without pressing the brake/clutch pedal;

❒ AVV: engine starting. This state can be entered by pressing the ignition device button once and pressing the brake/clutch pedal.

NOTE For versions with automatic transmission, with the ignition device at ON, if 30 minutes pass with the gear lever at P (Park) and the engine stopped, the ignition device will automatically move to the STOP position.

NOTE For versions with manual transmission, with the ignition device at ON, if 30 minutes pass and the engine stopped, the ignition device will automatically move to the STOP position.

NOTE With engine started, it is possible to go away from the vehicle taking the electronic key with you. The engine will still be running. The vehicle will indicate the absence of the key on board when the door is closed.

For more information on the engine start-up, see the description in the "Starting the engine" paragraph, in the "Starting and driving" chapter.

STARTING WITH FLAT KEY BATTERY

If the remote control battery is flat, proceed as follows to start the vehicle:

❒ lift the front armrest;

❒ lay the key on the indicated spot, respecting the depicted shape fig. 14.

14 04026S0002EM

STEERING LOCK

(where provided)

Activation

The steering lock is engaged when the driver door is opened with the ignition device button at STOP.

Deactivation

The steering lock disengages when the ignition device is pressed and the electronic key is recognised.

WARNING

1) *Always take the key with you when you leave your vehicle to prevent someone from accidentally operating the controls. Remember to engage the electric parking brake. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2) *It is absolutely forbidden to carry out any after-market operation involving steering system or steering column modifications (e.g. installation of anti-theft device) that could adversely affect performance, invalidate the warranty, cause SERIOUS SAFETY PROBLEMS and also result in the car not meeting type-approval requirements.*
3) *Before leaving the vehicle, ALWAYS engage the handbrake. On versions equipped with automatic transmission, activate mode P (Park) and press the ignition device to set it to STOP. When leaving the vehicle, always lock all the doors by pressing the button on the handle.*
4) *For versions equipped with the Keyless Start system, do not leave the electronic key inside or near the car or in a place accessible to children. Do not leave the vehicle with the ignition device in ON position. A child could activate the electric window winders, other controls or even start the vehicle.*
5) *If the ignition device has been tampered with (e.g. an attempted theft), have it checked over by the Alfa Romeo Dealership before driving again.*

ENGINE IMMOBILIZER

The Engine Immobilizer system prevents unauthorised use of the vehicle preventing to start the engine.

The system does not need to be enabled/activated: operation is automatic, regardless of the fact that the vehicle's doors are locked or unlocked.

When the ignition device is set to ON, the Engine Immobilizer system identifies the code transmitted by the key. If the code is recognised as valid, the Engine Immobilizer system enables engine starting.

When the ignition device is brought back to STOP, the Engine Immobilizer system deactivates the control unit controlling the engine, thus preventing its starting.

For the correct engine starting procedures, see the instructions in the "Starting the engine" paragraph, "Starting and driving" chapter.

IRREGULAR OPERATION

If, during starting, the key code is not correctly recognised, the icon is displayed on the instrument panel (see the instructions in the "Warning lights and messages" paragraph, "Knowing the instrument panel" chapter). This condition leads to the engine switching off after 2 seconds. In this case, bring the ignition device to STOP and then to ON; if it is still blocked, try with the other keys provided. If it is still not possible to start the engine, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

If the icon is displayed while driving, this means that the system is running a self-diagnosis (e.g. due to a voltage drop). If the display persists, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

IMPORTANT NOTES

Do not tamper with the Engine Immobilizer system. Any modifications/alterations could cause the protection function to be deactivated.

The Engine Immobilizer system is not compatible with certain aftermarket remote starting systems. The use of these devices could cause problems when starting and the deactivation of the protection function.

All keys provided with the vehicle have been programmed in accordance with the electronics on the vehicle itself.

Each key has its own code which must be stored by the system's control unit. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have new keys (up to 8) stored with a code.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ALARM SYSTEM

(where provided)

ALARM ACTIVATION

The alarm goes off in the following cases:
❒ wrongful opening of doors/bonnet/boot (perimeter protection);
❒ operation of starting device with a key which is not validated;
❒ cutting of the battery leads;
❒ movement inside the passenger compartment (volumetric protection, where provided);
❒ anomalous lifting/tilting of the car (anti-lift protection, where provided).

Activation of the alarm triggers the acoustic warning and the direction indicators.

IMPORTANT The function is ensured by the Engine Immobilizer system, which is automatically activated when you get out of the vehicle taking the electronic key with you and locking the doors.

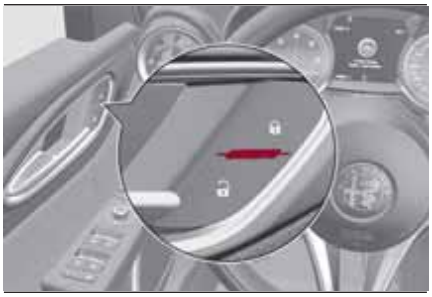
IMPORTANT The alarm is adapted to meet requirements in various countries.

SWITCHING ON THE ALARM

With the doors, bonnet and tailgate closed and the ignition device turned to STOP, point the electronic key towards the vehicle and press and release button 🔒 . The alarm can also be engaged by pressing the "door lock" button, located on the door external handle. For further information see the "Passive Entry" item in the "Doors" paragraph.

Except on some versions for specific markets, the system produces a visual and acoustic warning and enables door locking.

With the alarm engaged, the warning lights on the panels of the front door handles flash fig. 15.



15 04046S0001EM

The activation of the alarm is preceded by a self-diagnosis stage: if a fault is detected, the system emits a further acoustic signal.

If, after the alarm is switched on, a second acoustic signal is emitted, wait about 4 seconds and switch off the alarm by pressing the 🔒 button, check that the doors, bonnet and boot are closed correctly and then reactivate the system by pressing the 🔒 button.

If the alarm emits an acoustic signal even when the doors, bonnet and boot are correctly closed, a fault has occurred in system operation: in this case, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

TURNING THE ALARM OFF

Press the 🔓 button. The following operations are performed:
❒ two brief flashes of the direction indicators (where provided);
❒ two brief acoustic signals (where provided);
❒ doors are unlocked.

The alarm can also be disengaged by the holder of the key, by grasping one of the front handles. For further information see the "Passive Entry" item in the "Doors" paragraph.

IMPORTANT The alarm does not switch off when the central opening is activated using the metal insert in the key.

VOLUMETRIC/ANTI-LIFT PROTECTION

(where provided)

To ensure the correct operation of the protection, completely close the side windows.

To disable the function, press button fig. 16 before activating the alarm.

When the function is disabled, this is indicated by the LED on the button flashing for several seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

16 04046S0002EM

Any disabling of the volume sensing/anti-lift protection must be repeated each time the instrument panel is switched off.

DISABLING THE ALARM

To completely deactivate the alarm (e.g. during a long period of vehicle inactivity), close the doors by turning the metal insert of the key with remote control in the door lock.

DOORS

LOCKING/UNLOCKING DOORS FROM THE INSIDE

Central locking/unlocking

If all doors are closed properly, they will automatically be locked once the vehicle has exceeded about 20 km/h ("Auto Relock" function active).

Press the 🔒 button on the driver side, passenger side or rear (where provided) door panel trims fig. 17 to lock the doors.

With doors locked, press the 🔓 button on the front door panel trims to unlock them.

17 04056S0001EM

LOCKING/UNLOCKING DOORS FROM THE OUTSIDE

Locking from the outside

With the doors closed, press the 🔒 button on the key.

The door lock can anyway be activated with all doors locked and the boot open. When button 🔒 on the key is pressed, all locks are closed, including that of the open boot. The latter will be locked when it is closed.

2)

Door unlocking from the outside

Press button 🔓 on the key.

Locking/unlocking doors from the outside in an emergency

If the battery is flat or the remote control is in failure, you can lock/unlock the doors from the outside by inserting and rotating the metal insert (available inside the remote control) in the lock of the driver side door.

PASSIVE ENTRY

(where provided)

3)

The Passive Entry system can identify the presence of an electronic key near the doors and the boot.

The system enables the doors (or the boot) to be locked/released without pressing any button on the electronic key.

The key is detected only after the system recognizes the presence of a hand in one of the front handles. If the detected key is valid, the doors and the boot are unlocked (the elements that open depend on the settings on the Connect system).

Where the function is provided, grasping the handle of the driver's door unlocks the driver's side door or all doors

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

depending on the mode set using the Connect system.

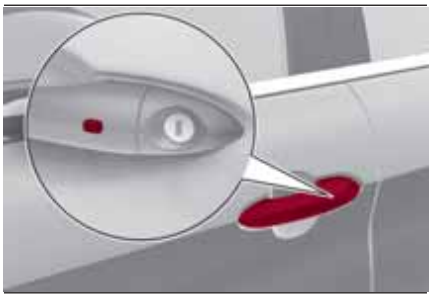
IMPORTANT If wearing gloves, or if it has rained and the door handle is wet, the activation sensitivity of the Passive Entry function may be reduced, resulting in a longer reaction time.

Door locking

To lock the doors, proceed as follows:

❒ make sure that you have the electronic key and are close to the driver or passenger side door handle;

❒ press the "door locking" button fig. 18 located on the handle or the button fig. 19 on the boot near the open button: this will lock all doors and the boot. Door locking will activate the alarm as well (where provided).



18 04056S0003EM

19 04056S0006EM

IMPORTANT After pressing the "door locking" button, you need to wait two seconds before the doors can be unlocked again using the door handle. It is therefore possible to check whether the vehicle is locked correctly by pulling the door handle within 2 seconds. The doors will not be unlocked again.

The vehicle doors and boot can anyway be locked pressing button 🔒 on the electronic key or on the inner door panel.

Driver side door emergency opening

If the electronic key does not work, e.g. because its battery is flat or the vehicle battery is flat, the emergency metal insert inside the key can anyway be used to operate the lock, unlocking the driver side door.

To extract the metal insert, proceed as follows:

❒ Pressing in the points indicated in fig. 20, extract the cover pulling downwards;

❒ remove the key insert from its housing fig. 21;

❒ insert the metal insert in the driver side door lock and turn it to unlock the door.

20 04016S0002EM

21 04016S0003EM

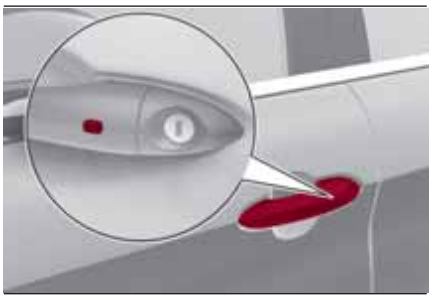
NOTE The metal insert of the key has no forced insertion direction and can be inserted indifferently in the lock.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IMPORTANT NOTES

To avoid leaving the electronic key inside the car accidentally, the Passive Entry function features an automatic door unlocking function.

If one of the vehicle doors is open and the "door locking" button fig. 22 on the front door handles or button 🔒 in the door panel inner trim fig. 23 is pressed, a check of the inside and outside of the vehicle for the presence of active electronic keys is made once all the open doors are closed.



22 04056S0003EM

23 04056S0001EM

Pulling the handle, do not press the door lock/unlock button fig. 22 on the handle fig. 24.

24 04056S0004EM

If one of the electronic keys is detected inside the vehicle and no other active electronic key is detected outside the vehicle, the Passive Entry function automatically unlocks all the vehicle doors and operates the direction indicators.

If, on the contrary, one or more electronic keys are inside the passenger compartment, pressing the 🔒 button on the remote control the keys inside the passenger compartment are temporarily disabled.

The vehicle will **not unlock** the doors if one of the following situations is present:

❒ an unauthorized electronic key close to the vehicle has been detected outside.

If the Passive Entry function is disabled using the Connect system, the protections to avoid leaving accidentally the electronic key inside the car are deactivated.

Boot access

Approaching the boot with a valid electronic key, press the opening button fig. 25 to access the boot.

25 04056S0005EM

IMPORTANT If the electronic key is inadvertently forgotten inside the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

luggage compartment and an attempt is made to close it from outside, the boot will not lock unless another electronic key is recognised outside and nearby the vehicle. With the doors locked, if only the boot is unlocked, if a key is detected inside when it is locked, the boot will unlock again and the lights flash twice.

IMPORTANT Before driving make sure the boot is closed correctly.

Boot lock

The boot of the vehicle may still be locked by pressing the button on the electronic key or by pressing the door lock button on the external handles or by pressing the button on the inner door panel of the vehicle.

On vehicles equipped with Passive entry, the boot and the doors can be locked by pressing the fig. 26 button located near the opening button of the boot.

26 04056S0006EM

System activation/deactivation

The Passive entry system can be activated/deactivated using the Connect system.

POWER LOCK

(where provided)

6)

This safety device inhibits the operation of the interior door handles and the door locking/unlocking button.
It thereby prevents the opening of the doors from inside the passenger compartment, serving as an obstacle to break-in attempts (e.g. broken window).

We recommend that you activate the device each time you park your vehicle.

Activating the device

The device is enabled on all the doors by pressing the button on the key twice quickly.

The direction indicators flash 3 times to let you know that the device is active.

If one or more of the doors are not closed correctly, the device will not activate, thus preventing a person from getting stuck inside the passenger compartment by entering the vehicle through, and then closing, the open door.

Deactivating the device

The device disengages automatically:
❒ when the doors are unlocked (pressing button on the key with remote control);
❒ when the ignition device is set to ON.

CHILD SAFETY DEVICE

7) 8)

This system prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

This device fig. 27 can be engaged only with the doors open.

27 04056S0007EM

❒ position : device engaged (door locked);
❒ position : device not engaged (door may be opened from the inside).

The device remains engaged even if the doors are electrically unlocked.

IMPORTANT The rear doors cannot be opened from the inside when the child safety device is engaged.

UNLOCKING THE DOORS WITH A FLAT BATTERY

Proceed as follows to unlock the doors if the vehicle battery is flat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear doors and passenger door

Proceed as follows:

❒ insert the metal insert of the electronic key in the release device housing fig. 28;

28 04056S0008EM

❒ turn the key clockwise for the right door locks or anticlockwise for the left door locks;

❒ remove the key from the housing.

Proceed as follows to realign the door lock device (only when the battery charge has been restored):

❒ press the 🔓 button on the electronic key;

❒ press the 🔓 button on the door panel;

❒ open by inserting the key insert in the driver's door lock;

❒ operate the internal door handle.

IMPORTANT For the rear doors, if the child lock device was engaged and the previously described locking procedure carried out, operating the internal handle will not open the door but will only realign the lock release device. To open the door, the outside handle must be used. The door central locking/unlocking buttons are not deactivated when the emergency lock is engaged.

WARNING

6) *Once the Power Lock system is engaged, it is impossible to open the doors from inside the vehicle. Before getting out of the car, please therefore check that there is no-one left inside.*

7) *NEVER leave children unattended inside the car, let alone leave the car with the doors unlocked in a place that children can access easily. Children may seriously, or even fatally, injure themselves. Also ensure that children do not inadvertently operate the electric parking brake, the brake pedal or the transmission lever.*

8) *Always use this device when carrying children. After engaging the child lock on both rear doors, check for effective engagement by trying to open a door with the internal handle.*

IMPORTANT

2) *Make sure to take the key with you once a door or the boot is locked, to prevent forgetting the key inside the vehicle. If the key has been locked in, it can only be recovered using the second provided key.*

3) *The operation of the recognition system depends on various factors, such as, for example, any electromagnetic wave interference from external sources (e.g. mobile phones), the charge of the battery in the electronic key and the presence of metal objects near the key or the car. In these cases it is still possible to unlock the doors by using the metal insert in the electronic key (see description on the following pages).*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SEATS

The front seats can be adjusted so as to ensure maximum comfort for the occupants.

Driver seat adjustment must also be carried out remembering that, keeping the shoulders resting firmly against the backrest, the wrists must be able to reach the top of the steering wheel rim.

Additionally, it must be possible to depress the clutch pedal with the left foot, for versions with manual gearbox, or fully depress the brake pedal with the right foot.

FRONT SEATS WITH MANUAL ADJUSTMENT

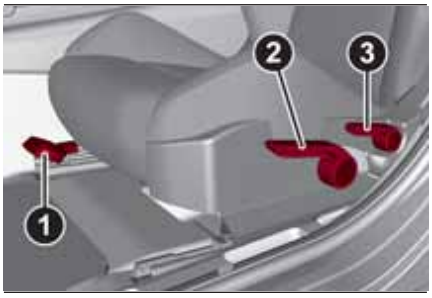
9)

4)

Longitudinal adjustment

Lift lever 1 fig. 29 and push the seat forwards or backwards.

10)



29 04066S0001EM

IMPORTANT Carry out the adjustment while sitting on the seat involved (driver side or passenger side).

Height adjustment

Adjust lever 2 fig. 29 upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.

IMPORTANT Carry out the adjustment while sitting on the seat involved (driver side or passenger side).

Backrest angle adjustment

Move lever 3 fig. 29 to adjust the backrest angle, accompanying it with the movement of the torso (operate the lever until the desired position is reached, then release it).

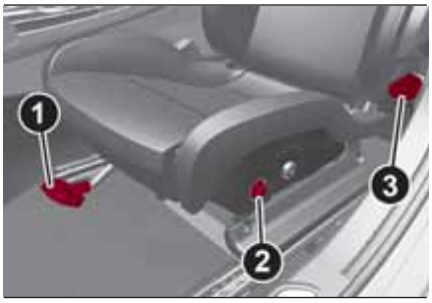
"SPARCO" SPORT CARBONSHELL SEATS

(where provided)

Longitudinal adjustment

Lift lever 1 fig. 30 and push the seat forwards or backwards.

10)



30 04066S0002EM

IMPORTANT Carry out the adjustment while sitting on the seat involved (driver side or passenger side).

Height adjustment

(electric)

Move button 2 fig. 30 upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Backrest angle adjustment

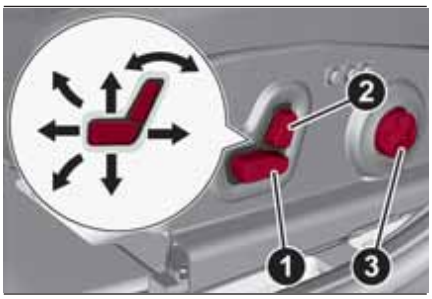
Move lever 3 fig. 30 to adjust the backrest angle, accompanying it with the movement of the torso (operate the lever until the desired position is reached, then release it).

ELECTRICALLY ADJUSTABLE FRONT SEATS

5)

The buttons for electrical seat adjustment are on the outer side of the seat, near the floor.

These buttons can be used to adjust the height, the lengthwise position in relation to the vehicle and the angle of the backrest.



31 04066S0003EM

Height adjustment

Use the rear part of the switch 1 fig. 31 to modify the height and/or the angle of the seat cushion.

Longitudinal adjustment

Push switch 1 fig. 31 forwards or backwards to move the seat in the corresponding direction.

Backrest angle adjustment

Push switch 2 fig. 31 forwards or backwards to adjust the backrest in the corresponding direction.

Electric lumbar adjustment

Use the joystick 3 to operate the lumbar support device to obtain maximum driving comfort.

Press the following parts of the joystick:

- *top*: inflates the cushion;
- *bottom*: deflates the cushion;
- *front*: inflates the upper part of the cushion;
- *rear*: inflates the lower part of the cushion;

IMPORTANT The electrical adjustment is only allowed when the ignition device is turned to ON and for about 60 seconds after it is turned to STOP. The seat can also be moved for about 60 seconds after opening/closing the door, locking/unlocking the vehicle or switching the front central courtesy light on.

Seat inclination adjustment (tilting)

(where provided)

The seat angle of the seat can be adjusted in four directions. Lift or push the front part of control 1 fig. 31 to move the front part of the seat in the corresponding direction. Release control 1 when the seat has reached the desired position.

Backrest width adjustment

(where provided)

Press switches 4 fig. 32 to adjust the backrest width to your body shape, by introducing air into the side padding.

A better fitting backrest holds the body better when cornering.

32 04066S0015EM

Memorising driver's seat positions

Buttons 5 fig. 32 allow to store and recall three different driver's seat positions. Storing and recalling is possible with the ignition device in the ON position, for 3 minutes after having opened the driver's side door or until the door is closed, even with the ignition device in the STOP position. The performed position memorisation is confirmed by a

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

beep. To memorise a seat position, adjust it with the various controls, then press the button where you want to memorise the position for 1.5 seconds. When a new seat position is memorised, the previously memorised position on the same button is automatically overwritten. Recalling a memorised position is also possible for about 3 minutes after the doors are opened and about 1 minute after the engine is stopped. To recall a memorised position, press the relevant button briefly.

FRONT SEAT ELECTRIC HEATING

(where provided)

With ignition device at ON, press buttons ☞ fig. 33 on the dashboard.

33 04066S0004EM

You can select three heating levels:

❒ *"minimum heating"*: one orange LED lit on the buttons;

❒ *"average heating"*: two orange LEDs lit on the buttons.

❒ *"maximum heating"*: three orange LEDs lit on the buttons.

Press the buttons for a few seconds to activate the "fast maximum heating" function.

After selecting one heating level, you need to wait for a few minutes until warm air flows into the compartment.

When the "maximum heating" setting is selected, the heater produces a boosted heat level for the first minutes of operation. After this, the heat lowers to reach the normal temperature level for the selected function.

The same "minimum heating" setting is automatically deactivated once a certain period of time has elapsed. This varies on a case-by-case basis, in accordance with the specific operating conditions.

IMPORTANT To preserve the battery charge, this function cannot be activated when the engine is off.

REAR SEATS

The rear seats allow for:

❒ Quadrifoglio version - two passengers;

34 04066S0006EM

❒ other versions - three passengers

35 04066S0005EM

The seats and the seatbelts are considered as components of the protection system for the vehicle's occupants.

⚠ 11)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IMPORTANT Refer to the "Passenger protection systems" chapter in the "Safety" chapter for the positioning of the seatbelts.

SPLIT FOLDING REAR SEAT

(where provided)

The boot can be partially (1/3 or 2/3) or totally extended by splitting the rear seat.

36 04066S0005EM

Partial extension of the luggage compartment (1/3 or 2/3)

Extending the right side of the boot allows you to carry two passengers on the left part of the rear seat, while extending the left side allows you to carry one passenger.

Proceed as follows:

❒ completely lower the rear seat head restraints;

❒ place the seatbelt so that it doesn't impede the movement of the backrest while tilting it;

❒ operate lever 1 fig. 37 to tilt the left part or lever 2 to tilt the right part of the backrest: it will automatically tilt forward. If necessary, accompany the backrest during the initial stage of tilting.

37 04066S0007EM

Full expansion of the boot

Tilting the rear seat completely forwards allows maximum loading volume.

Proceed as follows:

❒ completely lower the rear seat head restraints;

❒ place the seatbelts so that they don't impede the movement of the backrest while tilting it;

❒ use levers 1 and 2 to fold down the backrests: these will fold down forwards automatically. If necessary, accompany the backrests during the initial stage of tilting.

Repositioning the backrests

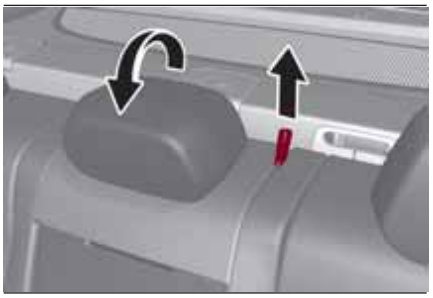
Move the seatbelts to the side, making sure that they are correctly extended and not twisted and that they are not trapped behind the backrests of the seats, then lift the backrests pushing them back until you hear the locking click on both attachment mechanisms.

12)

Central backrest section tilting

Before tilting the backrest, make sure that the rear central seatbelt is not fastened and that there aren't any objects in the central part of the cushion (if there are any, remove them).

Using the fig. 38 device, release the central part of the backrest from its housing and tilt it using the head restraint.



38 04066S0008EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Central backrest section repositioning

Using the head restraint, lift the central portion upwards, accompanying it during its movement, lightly press to make sure that it is properly attached. Make sure that the armrest is properly attached by trying to move it, if it is not attached, repeat the operation.

WARNING

9) *All adjustments must be made with the car stationary.*
10) *Once you have released the adjustment lever, always check that the seat is locked on the guides by trying to move it back and forth. If the seat is not locked into place, it may unexpectedly slide and cause the driver to lose control of the car.*
11) *Always make sure that all those on board the car are seated and are wearing their seat belts correctly.*
12) *Make sure the backrests are properly secured at both sides to prevent them from moving forward, in the event of sharp braking, with possible impact with of the passengers.*

IMPORTANT

4) *The fabric upholstery of the seats has been designed to withstand long-term wear deriving from normal use of the car. Some precautions are however required. Avoid prolonged and/or excessive rubbing against clothing accessories such as metal buckles and Velcro strips which, by applying a high pressure on the fabric in a small area, could cause it to break, thereby damaging the upholstery.*
5) *Do not place any kind of items under the electrically adjusted seats as they could impede their movement or otherwise damage the controls.*
6) *Before tilting the backrest, remove any objects on the seat cushion.*

HEADRESTS

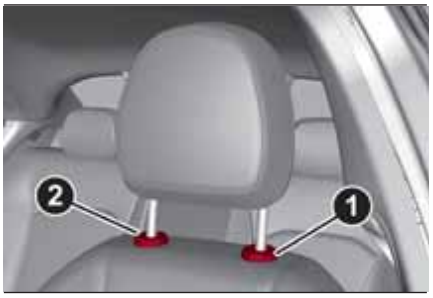
ADJUSTMENTS

13)

They are height-adjustable: to adjust them operate as follows.

Upward adjustment: raise the head restraint until it clicks into place.

Downward adjustment: press button 1 fig. 39 and lower the head restraint.



39 04076S0001EM

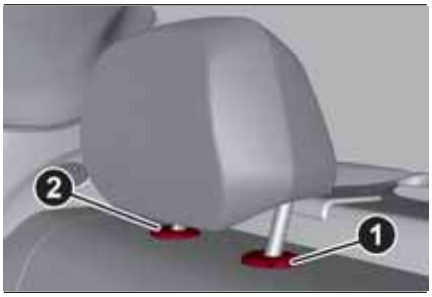
REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS (adjustments)

The height of the side seats head restraints can be adjusted. The head restraint of the central seat, where provided, is only removable.

Upward adjustment: raise the head restraint until it clicks into place.

Downward adjustment: press button 1 fig. 40 and lower the head restraint.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



40 04076S0002EM

IMPORTANT To permit maximum visibility for the driver, if the head restraints are not used, they are moved to the rest position: fully down.

HEAD RESTRAINTS (removal)

Proceed as follows to remove the head restraints:

❒ raise the head restraints to their maximum height;

❒ press button 1 and device 2 fig. 39 (front head restraints) or 1 and 2 fig. 40 (rear head restraints) at the side of the two supports, then remove the head restraints by pulling them upwards.

IMPORTANT Always re-position the rear head restraints if they had been removed before starting to drive normally. Re-fit the rods of the head restraints in their housings, holding buttons 1 and 2 pressed . Then, re-position the head restraints according to your needs.

WARNING

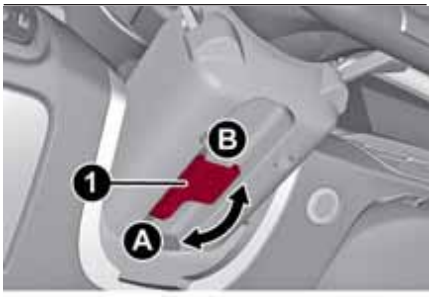
13) *Head restraints must be adjusted so that the head, rather than the neck, rests on them. Only in this case they can protect your head correctly. Any removed head restraints must be repositioned correctly, in order to protect the occupants in the event of impact: follow the instructions above.*

STEERING WHEEL

14) 15)

ADJUSTMENTS

The steering wheel can be adjusted both in height and in depth.



41 04086S0001EM

To adjust the position bring the lever 1 fig. 41 down to position A after which the steering wheel can be adjusted to the most suitable position and subsequently locked in this position by bringing lever 1 to position B again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ELECTRIC STEERING WHEEL HEATING
(where provided)

With ignition device at ON, press the fig. 42 button on the air conditioner control panel.

42 04086S0002EM

When the function is enabled, the LED on the button switches on.

IMPORTANT If this function is activated with the engine stopped the battery may run down.

WARNING

14) *All adjustments must be carried out only with the car stationary and engine stopped.*
15) *It is absolutely forbidden to carry out any after-market operation involving steering system or steering column modifications (e.g. installation of anti-theft device) that could adversely affect performance, invalidate the warranty, cause SERIOUS SAFETY PROBLEMS and also result in the car not meeting type-approval requirements.*

REAR VIEW MIRRORS

INTERIOR MIRROR

Operate lever fig. 43 to adjust the mirror into two different positions: normal or anti-glare.

43 04106S0001EM

The mirror is fitted with a safety device that causes its release in the event of a violent impact with the passenger.

ELECTROCHROMIC INTERIOR MIRROR
(where provided)

On some versions, an electrochromic mirror is available, that can automatically modify its reflecting action to prevent dazzling the driver fig. 44.

The electrochromic mirror has an ON/OFF button to activate/deactivate the electrochromic anti-glaring function.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

44 04106S0002EM

When reverse gear is engaged, the mirror is automatically set for daytime use.

DOOR MIRRORS

Electric adjustment

The mirrors can only be adjusted with the ignition device at ON.

Select the desired mirror using device 1 fig. 45:

45 04106S0004EM

16)

❒ device in position A: left mirror selected;

❒ device in position B: right mirror selected.

To adjust the selected mirror, use device 1 in the four directions.

IMPORTANT Once adjustment is complete, rotate device 1 to position D to prevent accidental movements.

Manual folding

To fold the mirrors move them from the open position to the closed position fig. 46.

46 04106S0005EM

Electric folding

(where provided)

With device 1 in position D, move it to position C fig. 45. Turn the device 1 again to position C to return the mirrors to the driving position.

If device 1 is turned again during door mirror folding (from closed to open position and vice versa), their movement direction is reversed.

Automatic activation

Activating the central door locking system from outside the vehicle automatically folds the mirrors, they return to the driving position when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

If the door mirrors were folded in using device 1, they can only be returned to the driving position by means of a new command on the same device.

IMPORTANT The hand-controlled electric folding operation can be enabled only when the vehicle speed is lower than 30 mph (50 km/h), so they can only be manually controlled up to that speed.

IMPORTANT The mirrors must always be open while driving and should never be folded.

ELECTROCHROMIC EXTERIOR MIRRORS

(where provided)

As well as an inside mirror, an electrochromic mirror is also available on some versions, which automatically modifies its reflecting properties to prevent dazzling the driver. The dazzle-prevention electrochromic enabling/disabling button fig. 44 is the same for all rear view mirrors.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ELECTRIC DOOR MIRROR HEATING

Pressing the button on the air conditioner activates the demisting/defrosting of the external rear view mirrors.

WARNING

16) *As door mirrors are curved, and therefore they may slightly alter the perception of distance.*

EXTERNAL LIGHTS

LIGHT SWITCH

The following controls are available in the panel on the left of the steering wheel: fig. 47

1 - parking sensors deactivation button;

2 -- side/tail light, daylight running lights, dipped beam headlight switch;

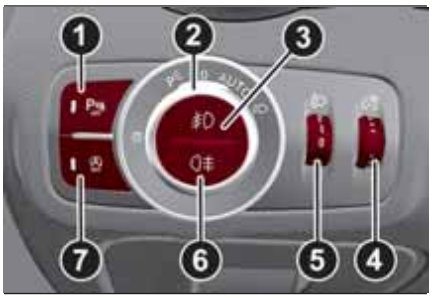
3 - fog lights button;

4 - ring nut for adjusting the brightness of the instrument panel and the graphics on the control buttons;

5 - ring nut for adjusting the headlight alignment (where fitted);

6 - rear fog lights button;

7 - Start&Stop Evo function deactivation button.



47 04126S0001EM

The external lights can be activated only when the ignition device is in position ON, except for the parking lights. See the "Parking lights" paragraph, in this chapter for more information.

The instrument panel and the various controls on the dashboard will be lit up when the exterior lights are switched on.

AUTO FUNCTION (dusk sensor)

This is an infrared LED sensor that works in conjunction with the rain sensor and is located on the windscreen. It is able to detect variations in outside lighting based on the light sensitivity set via the Connect system.

The higher the sensitivity, the lower the amount of external light needed to switch the lights on.

Function activation

Turn the light switch to AUTO.

IMPORTANT The function can only be activated with the ignition device at ON.

Function deactivation

To deactivate the function, turn the light switch to a position other than AUTO.

DIPPED HEADLIGHTS

Turn the light switch to to switch on the side lights, the lights on the instrument panel and the dipped beam headlights.

The warning light switches on in the instrument panel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS (DRL) AND SIDE LIGHTS (Daytime Running Lights)

(where provided)

17) 18)

With the ignition device turned to ON and the light switch turned to position **0** the daytime running lights are automatically activated; the other lights and interior lighting remain off.

Where provided, if the direction indicators are operated, the brightness of the corresponding DRL will be decreased as long as the direction indicators are on.

Where provided, the DRL can be activated/deactivated from Connect system, by selecting the following functions in sequence on the main MENU: "Settings", "Lights" and "Daytime Lights".

IMPORTANT In markets where DRL use is not required, these lights work as side lights and they are switched on and off jointly with the main beam headlights.

FRONT FOG LIGHTS

(where provided)

The fog light switch is integrated with the light switch.

Press the button to turn on the fog lights with side lights and dipped beam headlights on.

To turn off the fog lights, press the button again or turn the switch to the **0** position.

The fog lights are switched on with the dipped beam headlights or DRL on (the latter work as side lights) and are switched on when switching on the main beam headlights but not when the main beam headlights are flashed only.

If the fog lights are not switched off before stopping the engine, the next time the engine is started they will switch on again.

Cornering lights

(where provided)

The fog lights perform cornering function. This function allows to illuminate the road or a corner better by lighting the corresponding fog light.

The cornering function can be deactivated on the Connect system by selecting the following functions in sequence on the main menu: "Settings", "Lights" and "Cornering Lights".

REAR FOG LIGHT

The rear fog light switch is integrated with the light switch.

Press the button to switch the light on/off.

The rear fog light switches on only when the dipped beam headlights or fog lights are switched on. The light can be switched off by pressing the button again or by switching off the dipped beam headlights.

When the engine is stopped with the rear fog lights on, the next time the engine is started the lights will, however, be off.

PARKING LIGHTS

They are switched on if, within a few seconds from stopping the engine, the light switch is taken first to the **0** position and then to position P. All side lights switch on, if you want to leave only those on one side (right/left) switched on, you need to move the direction indicators control on the position on the side you wish to leave on.

The warning light switches on in the instrument panel.

IMPORTANT Turning the ignition switch to ON turns off the parking lights, which were on only on one side.

HEADLIGHTS OFF TIMER

The "Follow Me" function delays the switching off of the headlights after the vehicle has been stopped.

The function can be activated from the Connect system by selecting the following functions in sequence on the main menu: "Settings", "Lights" and "Follow me"; the side lights and the dipped beam headlights stay on for a time that can be set between 30, 60 and 90 seconds.

Function activation

With the headlights on, take the ignition device to the STOP position: the timer starts when the light switch is rotated to position **0**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IMPORTANT To activate this function the headlights must be deactivated within 2 minutes after the ignition device has been taken to STOP.

Function deactivation

This function is deactivated by switching on the headlights, the side lights or bringing the ignition device to ON.

AFS FUNCTION (Adaptive Frontlight System)

(where provided)

This is a system combined with Xenon headlights (Bi-Xenon 35 W headlamp version) which directs the main light beam, horizontally and vertically, and continuously and automatically adapts it to the driving conditions round bends/when cornering.

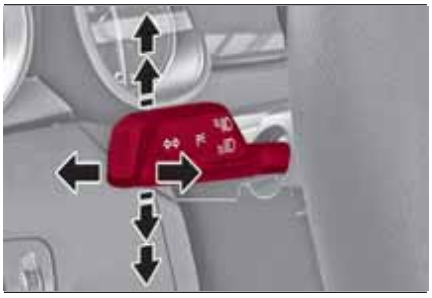
The system directs the light beam to light up the road in the best way, taking into account the speed of the car, the bend/corner angle and the speed of steering.

The adaptive lights are automatically activated when the car is started.

MAIN BEAM HEADLIGHTS

To activate the fixed main beam headlights push the left lever towards the instrument panel fig. 48. The light switch must be turned to **AUTO** or ≡D .

With main beam headlights on, the ≡D warning light/icon on the instrument panel will come on at the same time.



48 04126S0020EM

The main beam headlights are switched off by pushing the left stalk again. Warning light/icon ≡D switches off in the instrument panel.

Blinking

The flashing of the main beam headlights is activated by pulling the left stalk towards the steering wheel, the lights remain on while you are operating the lever.

Automatic high beam headlights

(where provided)

In order not to dazzle other road users, the lights are automatically deactivated when approaching vehicles travelling in the opposite direction or when following a vehicle travelling in the same direction.

This function is enabled with the Connect system and with the light switch turned to AUTO.

The first time the main beam headlights are activated (pushing the left lever), the function is activated (the warning light ≡D or the ≡D AUTO symbol comes on in the instrument panel).

If the main beam headlights are actually on, the blue icon/warning light ≡D will also come on in the instrument panel.

When the speed is higher than 35 mph (60 km/h) and the function is active, the lights switch off if the left stalk is pushed again.

When the speed is lower than 15 mph (25 km/h) and the function is active, the function switches the main beam headlights off.

If the fixed main beam headlights are operated quickly again (pushing the left stalk towards the instrument panel), the warning light/icon ≡D will switch on in the instrument panel and the main beam headlights will be switched on constantly until the speed exceeds 35 mph (60 km/h).

When the speed of 35 mph (60 km/h) is exceeded again, the automatic functioning is reactivated.

If the left stalk is pushed again in this condition, to request main beam headlight deactivation, the function deactivates and the main beam headlights switch off.

To deactivate the automatic function rotate the light switch ring nut to position ≡D .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DIRECTION INDICATORS

The direction indicators could assume two different flashing strategies: continuous or temporary (Lane Change).

To activate the continuous flashing function, move the left lever fig. 48 until end of stroke (unstable):

❒ *upwards*: activates the right direction indicator;

❒ *downwards*: activates the left direction indicator.

The ⇨ or ⇦ warning light will blink on the instrument panel.

The direction indicators turn of automatically when the car is brought back onto a straight course or by moving the lever in the opposite direction until the first click (about half way).

"Lane Change" function

When you want to signal the change of the driving lane, move the lever until the first impulse (about half stroke).

The direction indicator on the side selected will flash five times and then switch off automatically. To turn of the flashing before the end of the cycle, move the lever in the opposite direction until the first click (about half way).

SBL FUNCTION (Static Bending Light)

(where provided)

The SBL LEDs activate in order to better illuminate the street and increase the light angle while turning. This functione is enabled by rotating the light switch to position ≣D or **AUTO**. The SBL LEDs activate if the speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h) and the steering radius is below 1640 ft (500 m).

This function can be deactivated on the Connect system by selecting the following functions in sequence on the main menu: "Settings", "Lights" and "Cornering Lights".

HEADLIGHT ALIGNMENT ADJUSTMENT

Light beam direction

The correct aiming of the headlights is important for the comfort and safety of not only the driver but all other road users. This is also covered by a specific rule of the highway code.

The headlights must be correctly aligned to guarantee the best visibility conditions for all drivers while travelling with headlights on.

Contact a Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the headlights checked and adjusted, if necessary.

On vehicles equipped with manual headlight alignment adjuster, check light beam alignment every time the load or its distribution changes.

Headlight alignment corrector

(where provided)

This device is not available on vehicles equipped with Xenon headlights (Bi-Xenon 35 W headlamp version), as they require an automatic alignment correction system.

It only operates with the ignition device at ON.

49 04126S0006EM

To adjust rotate ring nut 5 fig. 49.

❒ Position 0: one or two people on the front seats;

❒ Position 1: 4 or 5 passengers

❒ Position 2: 4 or 5 passengers + load in the luggage compartment

❒ Position 3: driver + maximum admissible load stowed only in the luggage compartment

IMPORTANT Check the headlight alignment each time the weight of the load transported changes.

FOG LIGHTS ALIGNMENT

(where provided)

Contact a Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the headlights checked and adjusted, if necessary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ADJUSTING THE HEADLIGHTS WHEN ABROAD

Dipped beam headlights are adjusted for driving in the country where the vehicle was originally purchased.

When travelling in countries with opposite driving direction, to avoid dazzling the drivers on the other side of the road, you need to cover areas of the headlight according to the Highway Code of the country you are travelling in.

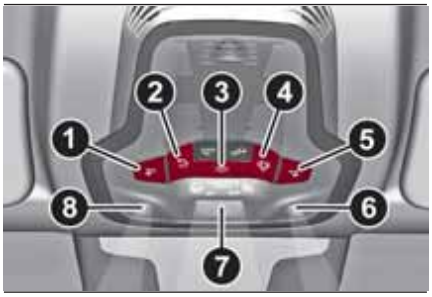
WARNING

17) *The daytime running lights are an alternative to the dipped headlights for driving during the daytime in countries where it is compulsory to have lights on during the day; where it is not compulsory, the use of daytime running lights is permitted.*
18) *Daytime running lights cannot replace dipped beam headlights when driving at night or through tunnels. The use of daytime running lights is governed by the highway code of the country in which you are driving. Comply with legal requirements.*

INTERIOR LIGHTS

FRONT CEILING LIGHT

❒ Switch 1 switches on/off light 8.
❒ Switch 2 is used to switch the rear ceiling lights on/off.
❒ Switch 3 switches on/off all lights inside the ceiling lights (front and rear) in the passenger's compartment.
❒ Switch 4 activates or deactivates the ceiling light 6, 7, 8 switching on/off upon opening/closing the doors. Lights switch on/off progressively.
❒ Switch 5 switches on/off light 6.



50 04136S0001EM

IMPORTANT Before getting out of the vehicle, make sure that the ceiling light bulbs are off; this will prevent the battery level from being uselessly drained once the doors are closed. In any case, if a light is left on by mistake, the ceiling light switches off automatically about 15 minutes after the engine has been switched off.

Ceiling light timing

On certain versions, to facilitate getting in/out of the vehicle at night or in poorly-lit areas, two timed modes have been provided.

Timing while getting into the car

The ceiling lights switch on according to the following modes:
❒ for a few seconds when the doors are unlocked;
❒ for about 3 minutes when one of the doors is opened;
❒ for a few seconds when the doors are locked.

Timing is interrupted when the ignition device is turned to ON.

Three modes are provided for switching off:
❒ when all doors are closed, the three-minute timer will stop and a few-seconds one will start. This timing will stop when the ignition device is turned to ON;
❒ when doors are locked (either with remote control or with key inserted on driver side door), the ceiling light switches off;
❒ the interior lights are switched off in any case after 15 minutes to preserve battery charge.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Timing while getting out of the car

After turning the ignition switch to STOP, the courtesy lights will turn on as follows:

❒ for a few seconds after the engine stops;

❒ for about 3 minutes when one of the doors is opened;

❒ for a few seconds when one of the doors is closed.

The timing stops automatically when the doors are locked.

Courtesy lights

Behind the driver and passenger sun visor (where provided) a ceiling light is located which illuminates the mirror behind the sun visor itself fig. 51.

51 04136S0002EM

The courtesy light switches on automatically by lifting cover 1.

GLOVE COMPARTMENT LIGHT

This light comes on automatically when the glove compartment is opened and switches off when it is closed.

The light switches on/off regardless of the ignition device status.

52 04136S0003EM

INTERIOR AMBIENT LIGHTING

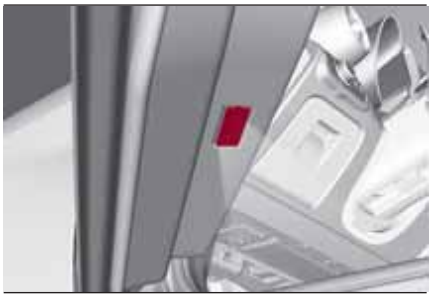
The brightness of the interior passenger compartment lights can be adjusted through the Connect system.

To access the adjustment function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Lights" and "Interior Ambient Lighting". The brightness can be adjusted at seven levels.

DOOR LIGHT

The door light is below the doors fig. 53. This light comes on automatically when the door is opened and switches off when it is closed.

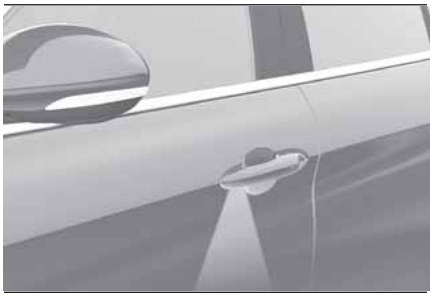
The light switches on/off regardless of the ignition device status.



53 04136S0007EM

On vehicles equipped with a "Passive entry" system, another light can be found under each external door handle fig. 54.

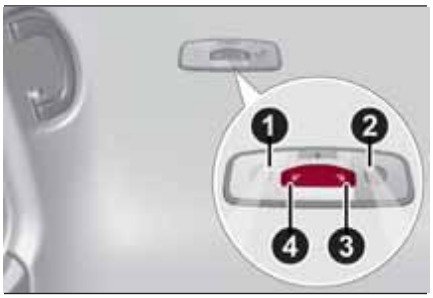
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



54 04136S0005EM

REAR CEILING LIGHT

The rear ceiling lights buttons are activated or deactivated with button 2 fig. 50 of the front ceiling lights.



55 04136S0004EM

❒ Switch 3 fig. 55 switches on/off light 2.

❒ Switch 4 switches on/off light 1.

The lights switch on when a door opened.

IMPORTANT The light will go out automatically after a few minutes if a door is forgotten open. To switch it on again, open another door or close and reopen the same door.

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT COURTESY LIGHTS

The luggage compartment features two courtesy lights fig. 56.

These switch on automatically when the boot is opened and switch off when it is closed.

56 04136S0006EM

The roof lights switch on/off regardless of the position of the ignition switch.

If the boot is left open, the lights will automatically switch off after 15 minutes to preserve the battery life.

INSTRUMENT PANEL AND CONTROL BUTTON GRAPHIC BRIGHTNESS ADJUSTMENT

With side lights or headlights on, operate on the ring nut fig. 57 upwards to increase light brightness of the instrument panel and of the control button graphics, or turn the ring nut downwards to decrease it. The control is pulsed so that for every action the level intensity increases/decreases, up to a maximum of seven.

57 04126S0016EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WINDSCREEN WIPER

The right stalk controls screen wiper/washer operation.

This operates only with the ignition device at ON.

SCREEN WIPER/WASHER

Operation

7) 8)

Ring nut fig. 58 can be set to the following positions:

- 0 windscreen wiper off.
- ·A rotating the ring nut to the first position activates the first sensitivity level of the rain sensor.
- ··A rotating the ring nut to the second position activates the second sensitivity level of the rain sensor.
- ·– rotating the ring nut to the third position activates the first continuous speed level of the windscreen wipers in manual mode.
- ··– rotating the ring nut to the fourth position activates the second continuous speed level of the windscreen wipers in manual mode.

58 04146S0001EM

Move the stalk upwards (unstable position) to activate the MIST function: operation is limited to the time for which the stalk is held in this position. When released, the stalk will return to its default position and the windscreen wiper will be automatically stopped. This function is useful to remove small deposits of dust from the windscreen, or morning dew.

IMPORTANT This function does not activate the windscreen washer; windscreen washer fluid will not therefore be sprayed onto the windscreen. To spray windscreen washer fluid onto the windscreen, the washing function must be used.

With ring nut in position ·– or ··–, the windscreen wiper will automatically adapt its operating speed to the speed of the vehicle.

Rain sensor sensitivity level

Positions ·A and ··A correspond also to sensitivity level 1 and 2 of the rain sensor.

"Smart washing" function

Pull the lever towards the steering wheel (unstable position) to operate the windscreen washer.

Keep the stalk pulled to activate both the windscreen washer jet and the windscreen wiper with a single movement; the latter turns on automatically.

The windscreen wiper stops working three strokes after the stalk is released.

A further stroke after approx. 6 seconds completes the wiping cycle.

RAIN SENSOR

This is located behind the interior rear view mirror, in contact with the windscreen fig. 59 and can detect the presence of rain and, consequently, manage the cleaning of the windscreen in accordance with the amount of water on the screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

59 04146S0002EM

The sensor has an adjustment range that varies progressively from wiper still (no stroke) when the windscreen is dry, to wiper at 2 nd continuous speed (fast continuous operation) with intense rain.

Activation

9) 10)

Rotating the ring nut fig. 58 to position A or A activates the rain sensor.

The activation of the sensor is signalled by a flick of the wiper (indicating that the command has been acquired).

The variation in sensitivity during rain sensor operation is also signalled by a flick of the wiper (command acquired and implemented). This stroke is also executed with the windscreen dry.

If the windscreen washer is used with the rain sensor activated, the normal washing cycle is performed, after which the rain sensor resumes its normal automatic operation.

IMPORTANT Keep the glass in the sensor area clean.

Deactivation

Use ring nut fig. 58 or turn the ignition device to STOP.

If the ignition device is moved to STOP position, leaving the ring nut fig. 58 in A or A , when the vehicle is next started (ignition device at ON), no wiping cycle occurs even if it rains.
This prevents accidental activation of the rain sensor when the engine is started (e.g. when the windscreen is being washed by hand or the wipers are stuck to the windscreen by ice).
You can restore the automatic functioning of the rain sensor by lifting the windscreen wiper control (antipanic function).

When the rain sensor is reactivated using any of the manoeuvres described above, reactivation is indicated by a single flick of the windscreen wipers, regardless of the condition of the windscreen.

In the event of malfunction of the rain sensor whilst it is active, the windscreen wiper operates intermittently at a speed consistent with the sensitivity setting of the rain sensor, regardless of whether there is rain on the glass, while sensor failure is indicated on the display.

The sensor continues to operate and it is possible to set the windscreen wiper to continuous mode or . The failure indication remains for as long as the sensor is active.

The rain sensor is able to recognise, and automatically adjust itself in the presence of the following conditions:
❒ presence of dirt on the controlled surface (e.g. salt, dirt, etc.);
❒ presence of streaks of water caused by the worn window wiper blades;
❒ difference between day and night.

19)

WARNING

19) *Make sure the device is switched off whenever the windscreen must be cleaned.*

IMPORTANT

7) *Never use the windscreen wipers to remove layers of snow or ice from the windscreen. In such conditions, the windscreen wiper may be subjected to excessive stress and the motor cut-out switch, which prevents operation for a few seconds, may intervene. If operation is not subsequently restored, even after restarting the engine, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*
8) *Do not operate the windscreen wiper with the blades lifted from the windscreen.*
9) *Do not activate the rain sensor when washing the car in an automatic car wash.*
10) *Make sure the device is switched off if there is ice on the windscreen.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PASSENGER COMPARTMENT AIR DIFFUSERS

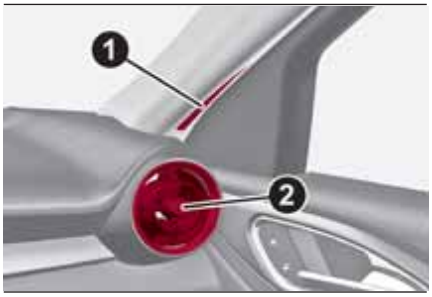
Side air diffusers

1 fig. 60 - Fixed side air vents.

2 fig. 60 - Adjustable side air diffusers:

❒ use ring nut 2 to adjust the diffuser to the desired position;

❒ turn ring nut 2 to adjust the air flow.



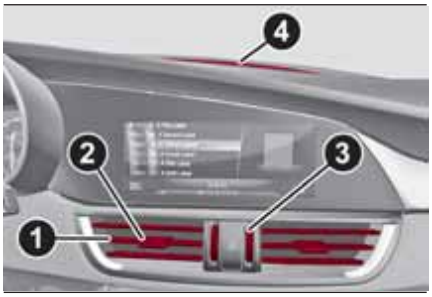
60 04156S0002EM

Central air diffusers

1 fig. 61 - Adjustable central air diffusers:

❒ use device 2 to adjust the diffuser to the desired position;

❒ turn ring nut 3 to adjust the air flow.



61 04156S0003EM

4 - Windscreen air vent

Rear air diffusers

1 fig. 62 - Adjustable rear air diffusers:

❒ use ring nut 2 to adjust the diffuser to the desired position;

❒ turn ring nut 2 to adjust the air flow.

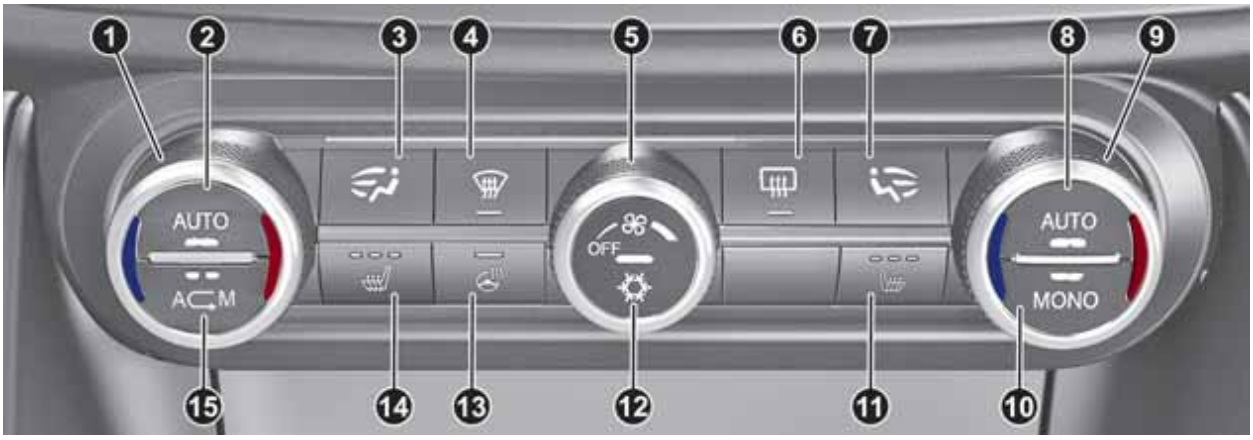
62 04156S0004EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AUTOMATIC DUAL-ZONE CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM

2)

Controls



63 04156S0005EM

1. Driver side temperature adjustment knob; 2. Driver side AUTO function activation button (automatic operation); 3. Driver's side air distribution selection button; 4. MAX-DEF function activation button (rapid defrosting/demisting); 5. Fan speed adjustment knob; 6. Heated rear window on/off button; 7. Passenger side air distribution selection button; 8. Passenger side AUTO function activation button (automatic operation); 9. Passenger side temperature adjustment knob; 10. MONO function button (set temperature alignment) driver/passenger side; 11. Passenger side seat heater activation button; (where provided, see chapter on seats); 12. Climate control compressor on/off button; 13. Steering wheel heater activation button; (where provided, see chapter on steering wheel); 14. Driver side seat heater activation button; (where provided, see chapter on "Seats"); 15. On/off button for internal air recirculation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Description

The automatic bizone air conditioner adjusts the temperature and air distribution in the cockpit independently between the driver and passenger.

The system maintains comfort inside the passenger compartment and compensates for possible variations in outside weather conditions.

NOTE The reference temperature is 72°F (22°C) for optimal comfort management.

The automatically controlled parameters and functions are:

❒ air temperature at the driver/front passenger side vents;

❒ air distribution at the driver/front passenger side vents;

❒ fan speed (continuous variation of the air flow)

❒ compressor engagement (for cooling/dehumidifying the air);

❒ air recirculation.

All these functions can be adjusted manually by operating the system and selecting one or more functions and modifying their parameters.

Manual selections always have higher priority than automatic settings and are stored until the AUTO button is pressed, except for cases in which the system intervenes for safety reasons.

The following operations do not deactivate the AUTO function:

❒ recirculation activation/deactivation;

❒ compressor activation/deactivation;

❒ MONO function activation;

❒ heated rear window activation/deactivation.

The temperature of the air sent is always automatically controlled according to the temperature set on the display (except for when the system is off or in certain conditions when the compressor is not running).

The system allows the following to be set or adjusted manually:

❒ driver/passenger side air temperature;

❒ fan speed (continuous variation);

❒ air distribution in 7 positions for driver and passenger side;

❒ compressor enabling;

❒ rapid defrosting/demisting function

❒ air recirculation;

❒ heated rear window;

❒ system deactivation.

Operating mode of the climate control system

The climate control system can be activated in different ways: it is advisable to press the AUTO button and turn the knobs to set the desired temperatures.

In this way the system operates completely automatically to adjust the temperature, quantity and distribution of the air introduced into the passenger compartment. It also manages the air recirculation system and the enablement of the air conditioning compressor.

During automatic operation, you can change the set temperatures, activate/deactivate the rear window heater, activate the MONO function, activate/deactivate the compressor and the recirculation at any time by using the relevant buttons or knobs: the system will automatically change the settings to adjust to the new requirements.

AIR CONDITIONER PARAMETERS DISPLAY

The air conditioner parameters can be viewed on the Connect system display.

There is a dedicated "hidden" pop up 1 fig. 64 on the Connect system display, which activates by pressing or rotating the air conditioner buttons or knobs without a status LED. If no operations are performed for a preset period of time, the pop up on the display will disappear.

64 04156S0006EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Air temperature adjustment

Turn knob 1 or 9 to the right or left to adjust the air temperature in the front left area (knob 1) and in the front right area (knob 9) of the passenger compartment. The set temperatures are shown on the Connect system.

Press the MONO button to align the air temperature between the two areas.

Turn knob 9 to return to the separate management of air temperatures in the two zones.

Turn the knobs fully right or left to engage HI (maximum heating) or LO (maximum cooling) respectively. To deactivate these functions, turn the temperature knob to the desired temperature.

Air distribution selection

Press buttons 3 and 7, on the left and right side only, to set one of the seven possible settings:

- Air flow to the windscreen and front side window vents to demist/defrost them.
- Air flow at central and side dashboard vents to ventilate the chest and the face during the hot season.
- Air flow to the front and rear footwell vents. This air distribution setting heats the passenger compartment most quickly, giving a prompt sensation of warmth.
- Air flow distributed between footwell vents (hotter air) and central and side dashboard vents (cooler air). This air distribution setting is useful in spring and autumn on sunny days.
- Air flow distributed between footwell vents and windscreen and front side window defrosting/demisting vents. This distribution setting allows the passenger compartment to be warmed up efficiently and prevents the windows from misting up.
- Air flow distribution between windscreen demisting/defrosting vents and side and central dashboard vents. This allows air to be sent to the windscreen in conditions of strong sunlight.
- Air flow distribution to all diffusers on the vehicle.

In AUTO mode, the air conditioner automatically manages the air distribution. When set manually, the air distribution is indicated by the respective symbols on the Connect system display switching on.

Fan speed adjustment

Turn knob 5 to increase/decrease the fan speed. The speed is displayed by the lighting up of the symbols on the Connect system display.

❒ maximum fan speed = all LEDs lit;

❒ minimum fan speed = one LED lit.

The fan can be excluded by rotating knob 5 to position 0 (all segments on the Connect system display are turned off).

IMPORTANT To restore automatic control of the fan speed after a manual adjustment, press the AUTO button.

AUTO button

When the AUTO button is pressed (LED on button lit) the climate control system automatically adjusts the following settings in the corresponding zones:

❒ quantity and distribution of the air introduced into the passenger compartment;

❒ climate control compressor;

❒ air recirculation;

❒ cancels any previous manual settings.

This is indicated by the LED on the AUTO button switching on.

Selecting the AUTO function lights up the LED on the compressor activation/deactivation button ✲ .

If a manual intervention is made on the air distribution or on the fan speed, the LED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

on the AUTO button switches off to indicate that the climate control system is no longer controlling all functions automatically.

To restore automatic system control after one or more manual adjustments, press the AUTO button.

MONO button

Press the MONO button (LED on button lit) to align the passenger side air temperature with that of the driver side.

This function makes temperature regulation easier when the driver is travelling alone.

Turn knob 9 or button 7 to set the passenger side temperature and return to separate air temperature management.

Air recirculation and AQS (Air Quality System) function

The air recirculation is managed according to the following operating mode:

❒ automatic engagement: LED on above the label A, on button 15;

❒ forced activation (air circulation always activated): LED on above the icon ⊂⊃, on button 15;

❒ forced deactivation (air recirculation always off with intake of outside air): both LEDs on button 15 are off.

The three operating conditions are obtained by pressing the air recirculation button ⊂⊃, 15, in sequence.

Enabling the AQS (Air Quality System) function

(where provided)

The AQS function automatically activates internal air recirculation when the outside air is polluted (e.g. in traffic queues and tunnels), when the automatic recirculation function is selected.

At low external temperatures or with high humidity, the automatic function turns off to avoid misting up the windows. The user can select the function again by pressing the recirculation button 15.

IMPORTANT With the AQS function active, after the internal air recirculation system has been functioning for a long time, the climate control system enables a few cycles of outside air intake to change the air in the passenger compartment for a preset time. The AQS function is disabled during the air changes.

IMPORTANT The engagement of the recirculation system makes it possible to reach the required heating/cooling conditions faster. It is, however, inadvisable to use it on rainy/cold days as it would considerably increase the possibility of the windows misting up inside (especially if the climate control system is off). When the outside temperature is low, recirculation is forced off (air drawn from the outside) to prevent the windows misting up.

In automatic operation inside air recirculation will be controlled automatically by the system according to outside environmental conditions.

IMPORTANT It is advisable not to use the air recirculation function when the outside temperature is low to prevent the windows from rapidly misting up.

Climate control compressor

Press button ✲ to activate/deactivate the compressor (activation is indicated by the lit LED on the button). The system remembers that the compressor has been switched off, even after the engine has stopped.

When the compressor is switched off the system deactivates air recirculation to prevent the windows from misting up. If the climate control system is capable of maintaining the required temperature, the LED on the AUTO button does not switch off.

To restore automatic control of compressor engagement, press again button ✲ or the AUTO button. With the compressor off, the fan speed can be reset manually.

With the compressor on and the engine running, manual ventilation cannot be lower than the minimum speed (only one LED lit).

IMPORTANT With the compressor off, air cannot be introduced to the passenger compartment with a temperature lower

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

than the outside temperature. Moreover, under certain environmental conditions, windows could mist up rapidly since the air is not dehumidified.

Rapid window demisting/defrosting (MAX-DEF function)

Press the button to activate (LED on button on) the windscreen and side window demisting/defrosting function.

The climate control system carries out the following operations:

- switches on the air conditioning compressor when environmental conditions are suitable;
- sets air recirculation off;
- sets maximum air temperature (HI) in both areas;
- sets fan speed according to the engine coolant temperature;
- directs air flow to windscreen and front side windows vents;
- sets heated rear window on.
- displays the fan speed (LED on the Connect system display lit) and the used distribution.

IMPORTANT The MAX-DEF function remains on for about 3 minutes from when the engine coolant reaches the appropriate temperature.

When the function is activated, the LED on the AUTO button switches off. With the function activated the only possible manual adjustments are adjusting the fan speed and turning the heated rear window off.

When the , or AUTO buttons are pressed, the climate control system will deactivate the MAX-DEF function.

Heated rear window demisting/defrosting

Press the button to activate (LED on button on) the heated rear window demisting/defrosting of the external rear view mirrors.

This function switches off automatically after about 20 minutes or when the engine is turned off. It is not switched on automatically the next time the engine is started.

IMPORTANT Do not apply stickers to the inside of the heated rear window over the heating filaments, to avoid damage that might cause them to stop working properly.

Humidity sensor

The humidity sensor helps to prevent the windows from misting up. The AUTO function (LED on the button on) must be activated to enable it.

When the outside temperature is low, the system could automatically turn the compressor on and turn air recirculation off for safer driving.

Switching off/on the climate control system

Switching off the climate control system

Rotate knob 5 counter-clockwise to turn off the air conditioner.

With climate control system off:

- air recirculation is on, thus isolating the passenger compartment from the outside;
- the compressor is off;
- the fan is off;
- the heated rear window can be activated/deactivated.

IMPORTANT The climate control system control unit stores the temperatures set before the system was switched off and restores them when any button of the system is pressed.

Switching on the climate control system

To switch on the climate control system in fully automatic mode press the AUTO button.

START & STOP EVO

The automatic dual zone climate control system manages the Start&Stop Evo (engine off when the vehicle speed is 0 mph (0 km/h)) to ensure adequate comfort inside the vehicle.

In particular, the climate control system turns off the Stop & Start Evo if:

- the climate control system is in AUTO

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

mode (LED on the button switched on) and the temperature conditions inside the vehicle are far from a comfort temperature;

❒ the climate control system is in LO maximum cooling;

❒ the climate control system is in the MAX-DEF status.

When the Stop-Start Evo is on (engine off and vehicle speed equal to 0 mph (0 km/h)), the climate control system requests the engine to be restarted if the inside temperature conditions rapidly deteriorate (or if the user requests maximum cooling – LO – or quick demisting – MAX-DEF).

With Stop & Start Evo on (engine off and vehicle speed equal to 0 mph (0 km/h)), the flow is reduced as much as possible, to maintain the passenger compartment comfort conditions for longer.

The electronic climate control system control unit attempts to manage the decreased comfort caused by stopping the engine as far as possible (switching off the compressor and engine coolant pump). However, it is possible to give priority to the climate control system by switching off the Start & Stop Evo by pressing the Ⓐ button located on the dashboard controls to the left of the steering wheel.

In particularly severe climate conditions it is recommended to limit the use of the Stop/Start Evo to prevent the compressor from continuously switching on and off, with consequent rapid misting of the windows and accumulation of humidity with unpleasant smells in the passenger compartment.

When the Start&Stop Evo is on (engine off and vehicle at a standstill), the automatic recirculation management may be turned off to prevent the windows misting up, always taking air in from outside, to reduce the probability of the windows misting up (as the compressor is off).

ADDITIONAL HEATER

(where provided)

The additional heater activates automatically depending on the environmental conditions and with engine started.

IMPORTANT The heater only operates if the outside temperature and engine coolant temperature are low. The heater will not activate if the battery voltage is too low.

System maintenance

In winter, the climate control system must be turned on at least once a month for about 10 minutes.

Have the system inspected at an Alfa Romeo Dealership before the summer.

Gas identification label

(where provided)

The label fig. 65 is applied onto the front end of the bonnet.

65 04156S0007EM

IMPORTANT

2) *The system uses R1234yf coolant gas, which does not pollute the environment in the event of accidental leakage. Under no circumstances use R134a and R12 fluids, which are incompatible with the components of the system.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WINDOW WINDERS

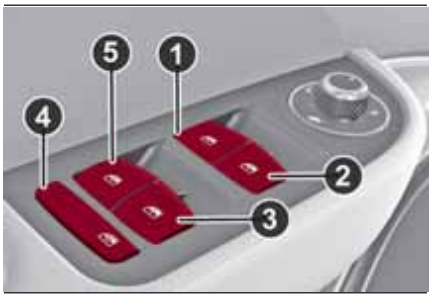
ELECTRIC WINDOWS

20)

They work with the ignition device in the ON position and for about 3 minutes after the ignition device has been turned to the STOP position. When one of the front doors is opened this operation is disabled.

Driver side front door controls

The buttons are located on the door panel trim. All windows can be controlled from the driver side door panel fig. 66.



66 04166S0001EM

❒ 1: front left window opening/closing. "Continuous automatic" operation during window opening/closing stage and anti-pinch system activated.
❒ 2: front right window opening/closing. "Continuous automatic" operation during window opening/closing stage and anti-pinch system activated.
❒ 3: rear right window opening/closing. "Continuous automatic" operation during window opening/closing stage and anti-pinch system activated.
❒ 4: enabling/disabling of rear door electric window controls;
❒ 5: rear left window opening/closing. "Automatic continuous" operation during window opening/closing and anti-pinch system activated.

Window opening

Push the buttons to open the desired window.

When any of the opening buttons on front or rear doors is pressed once briefly, the window moves in stages; while pressing the button for a second time, the "continuous automatic" operation is activated.

If the button is pressed again, the window will stop in the desired position.

Window closing

Lift the buttons to close the desired window.

The window closing stage occurs following the same logic described for the opening stage both of the front door windows and the rear door windows.

Passenger side front door/rear door controls

On the door control panel, buttons are provided to control the associated windows.

Window anti-pinch safety device

The vehicle is equipped with an anti-pinch safety device for the raising of the windows.

This safety system can recognise the presence of any obstacle during the window closing movement. If this occurs, the system stops the window's movement and reverts it, depending on its position.

This device is also useful if the windows are activated accidentally by children on board the vehicle.

The anti-pinch safety function is activated both during the manual and the automatic operation of the window.

When the anti-pinch system is activated the window travel is immediately interrupted. Then the window travel is automatically reversed and the window lowers by about 7.5 in (20 cm) in relation to the first stop position. The window cannot be operated in any way during this time.

IMPORTANT If the anti-pinch protection intervenes 3 consecutive times within 1 minute or is faulty, the automatic closing operation of the window is inhibited, only allowing it in "steps"; the button is released for the subsequent manoeuvre. In order to restore the correct operation of the system, the relevant window must be lowered.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Electric window system initialisation

If power supply is interrupted, the electric window automatic operation must be reinitialised.

The initialisation procedure described below must be carried out with the doors closed and for each door:

❒ fully close the window to be initialised, with manual operation;

❒ after the window has reached the upper end of travel, hold the up button down for at least 3 seconds.

WARNING

20) *Incorrect use of the electric windows may be dangerous. Before and during operation, always check that nobody is exposed to the risk of being injured either directly by the moving window or through objects getting caught or hit by it.*

ELECTRIC SUNROOF

(where provided)

21)

The electric sunroof comprises two glass panels (the front one is mobile and the rear one fixed) and is fitted with two electrically operated sun blinds.

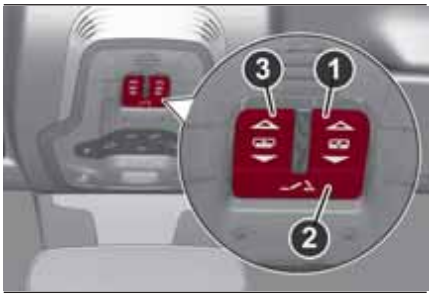
Operation of the sunroof is only possible with the ignition device at AVV.

OPENING

Press button 1 fig. 67 near the △ symbol: to open the roof completely.

11)

The automatic motion can be interrupted in any position by pressing button 1 again.



67 04186S0001EM

CLOSING

From the position of complete opening press button 1 next to the ▽ symbol: the roof will close completely.

The automatic motion can be interrupted in any position by pressing button 1 again.

SWIVEL OPENING

To bring the roof into swivel position, press and release the specific button 2 fig. 67.

This type of swivel opening can be activated irrespective of the position of the sun roof. When starting with the roof in closed position, pressing the button automatically causes its swivel-opening. If the roof is already open, the button must be held until the roof reaches the swivel-opening position.

Pressing button 2 again during automatic movement of the roof will stop it.

SUN BLINDS MOVEMENT

The sun blinds are electrically operated.

Press button 3fig. 67 △ symbol: to open the sun blinds.

Press button 3 ▽ symbol: to close the sun blinds.

The automatic motion can be interrupted in any position by pressing button 3 again.

ABC

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ANTI-PINCH SAFETY DEVICE

The sun roof has an anti-pinch safety system capable of detecting the presence of an obstacle during the closing movement: if this happens, the system intervenes and the movement of the roof is immediately reversed into opening.

INITIALISATION PROCEDURE

Automatic operation of the sunroof must be initialised again in case of faulty sunroof operation.
Proceed as follows:
❒ press button 1 next to the ▽ symbol to bring the roof into completely closed position;
❒ bring the ignition device to STOP and wait at least 10 seconds;
❒ set the ignition device to AVV;
❒ hold button 1 down for at least 10 seconds, then you should hear the mechanical stop of the roof motor;
❒ within 5 seconds hold button 1 down: the roof will perform a complete automatic opening and closing cycle (to indicate that the initialisation procedure has been successful). If this does not occur, the procedure must be restarted from the beginning.

WARNING

21) *When leaving the vehicle, make sure to take the key with you to avoid the risk of injury to those still inside the car due to accidental operation of the sunroof. Improper use of the roof can be dangerous. Before and during operation, always check that no-one is exposed to the risk of being injured by the moving sunroof or by objects getting caught or hit by it.*

IMPORTANT

11) *Do not open the sun roof if a roof rack or crossbars are fitted. Do not open the sun roof if there is snow or ice on it: you may damage it.*

BONNET

OPENING

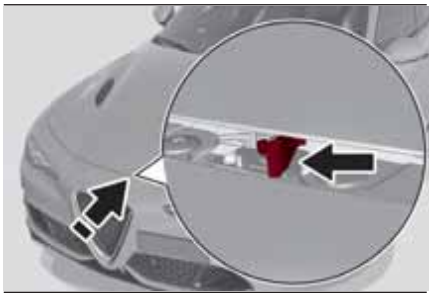
22) 23)

Proceed as follows:
❒ inside the passenger compartment pull the release lever, fig. 68;

68 04196S0001EM

❒ go to the outside of the vehicle and position yourself in front of the grille;
❒ lift the bonnet slightly from right to left as indicated on the unhooking device's arrow, fig. 69;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



69 04196S0002EM

❒ raise the bonnet completely: the operation is facilitated by the presence of two gas shock absorbers which hold it the all open position.

Do not tamper with the shock absorber and accompany the bonnet while lifting it.

CLOSING

22) 24)

To close, lower the bonnet to approximately 40 centimetres from the engine compartment then let it drop. Make sure that the bonnet is completely closed and not only fastened by the locking device by trying to open it. If it is not perfectly closed, do not try to press the bonnet lid down but open it and repeat the procedure.

Quadrifoglio version: given the extreme lightness of the component, to close, lower the bonnet up to 40 centimetres from the engine compartment then lightly push it. Make sure that the bonnet is completely closed and not only fastened by the locking device by trying to open it. If it is not perfectly closed, do not try to press the bonnet down but open it and repeat the procedure.

IMPORTANT Always check that the bonnet is closed correctly to prevent it from opening while the vehicle is travelling. Since the bonnet is equipped with a double locking system, one for each side, you must check that it is closed on both its side ends.

WARNING

22) *Perform these operations only when the car is stationary.*
23) *Use both hands to lift the bonnet. Before lifting, check that the windscreen wiper arms are not raised from the windscreen or in operation, that the vehicle is stationary and that the electric parking brake is engaged.*
24) *For safety reasons, the bonnet must always be properly closed while the car is travelling. Therefore, make sure that the bonnet is properly closed and that the lock is engaged. If you discover that the bonnet is not perfectly closed during travel, stop immediately and close the bonnet in the correct manner.*

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT

The luggage compartment unlocking is electrically operated and is deactivated when the car is in motion.

The warning triangle fig. 72 is housed inside the luggage compartment, on the lid lining.

OPENING FROM THE OUTSIDE

Opening from the outside

When unlocked, the boot can be opened from outside the vehicle using the electric opening button fig. 70 located between the plate lights, until you hear the unlocking click or by quickly pressing button on the remote control twice.

70 04056S0005EM

The direction indicators will blink and the internal lights will switch on when the boot is opened. They switch off automatically when the boot is closed.

The lights switch off automatically after a few minutes if the boot is left open.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Opening from the inside

When unlocked, the boot can be opened from inside the vehicle using the opening button fig. 71 located under the dashboard near the engine bonnet opening lever until you hear the unlocking click.

71 04206S0002EM

CLOSING

12)

Grip one of the handles fig. 72 and lower the boot, pressing next to the lock until it clicks.

72 04206S0003EM

IMPORTANT Before closing the boot make sure you have the key with you to prevent locking it in the boot. The boot will be locked automatically and can only be opened using another key.

IMPORTANT It will not be possible to open the boot with a key or by pressing the button in the passenger compartment when the battery is disconnected. So, always extract the manual boot opening strap before disconnecting the battery. The procedure is described in the "Prolonged vehicle inactivity" paragraph in the "Servicing and Care" chapter.

IMPORTANT This procedure must be carried out exclusively in safe places because it allows to open the boot unconditionally.

BOOT INITIALISATION

IMPORTANT If the battery is disconnected or the protection fuse blows, the boot opening/closing mechanism must be reinitialised as follows:

❒ close all the doors and the boot;

❒ press the 🔒 button on the remote control;

❒ press the 🔓 button on the remote control.

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT SPECIFICATIONS

Access to the Tire Pressure Kit

To access the "Tire Pressure Kit" (for its use, see chapter "In an emergency"), proceed as follows:

❒ lift the carpet, fig. 73.

73 04206S0004EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Securing your load

There are four hooks fig. 74 inside the luggage compartment for attaching the cargo net or cables which can secure the load carried.

74 04206S0005EM

IMPORTANT Do not apply, on a single hook, a load greater than 10 kg.

Cargo net

This is useful for correctly arranging the load and/or for transporting light materials.

The cargo net is available from the Alfa Romeo Dealership.

IMPORTANT

12) *When you need to disconnect or remove the battery, do not close the boot. In order to avoid possible accidental closure, it is recommended to place an obstacle (e.g. a cloth) on the lock that would physically avoid closure.*

INTERIOR FITTINGS

GLOVE COMPARTMENT

25)

To open the compartment proceed as follows:

❒ (where provided) unlock by placing the metal insert that is in the key in the lock;

❒ operate handle fig. 75, to open the compartment.

75 04246S0001EM

When the compartment is opened a light switches on to illuminate it.

IMPORTANT Do not insert objects of such a size that the compartment cannot be completely closed. Moreover make sure that the compartment is completely closed when driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SUN VISORS

They are located at the sides of the interior rear view mirror. They can be adjusted forwards and sideways.

To direct the visor laterally, detach the visor from the interior rear view mirror side hook and turn it towards the side window.

Courtesy mirrors with light are fitted on the back of the sun visors and can be used even in poor light conditions.

76 04246S0002EM

IMPORTANT On both sides of the passenger side sun visor there is a label advising that it is compulsory to deactivate the airbag if a rear facing child restraint system is fitted. Always comply with the instructions on the sun visor (see the "Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) - Airbag" paragraph in "Safety" chapter).

POWER SOCKET

It is located inside the storage compartment on the central tunnel fig. 77. It only operates with the ignition device at ON.

77 04246S0003EM

IMPORTANT Do not connect devices with power higher than 180 W to the socket. Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable adaptors.

FRONT ARMREST

This is located between the front seats.

There is a storage compartment inside the armrest: operate device fig. 78 to access and raise the armrest.

78 04246S0004EM

CUP/CAN HOLDER

Two cup/can holders fig. 79 are available in the central tunnel.

79 04246S0005EM

Too access the cup holders, slide partition 1 fig. 79 forwards. To close the compartment, push partition 1 forwards, it will close automatically.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CIGARETTE LIGHTER AND ASHTRAY

(where provided)

26) 27)

To activate the cigarette lighter, press button 1 fig. 80.

After a few seconds the cigarette lighter goes back to its initial position and it is ready for use.

IMPORTANT Always check that the cigarette lighter is switched off.

80 04246S0015EM

The ashtray 2 is a removable plastic container located inside the right cup/can holder, behind the cigarette lighter.

FIRE EXTINGUISHER

(where provided)

An extinguisher is provided on some versions.

WARNING

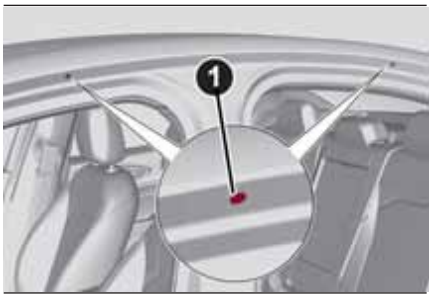
25) *Do not travel with the storage compartment open: it may injure the front seat occupants in the event of an accident.*
26) *The cigar lighter gets extremely hot. Handle it carefully and make sure that children don't use it: risk of fire and/or burns.*
27) *Do not use the ashtray as a waste paper basket: it may catch fire in contact with cigarette stubs.*

ROOF RACK/SKI RACK

The attachments 1 fig. 81 are located in the areas illustrated in the figure and can only be accessed with the doors open.

28) 29)

13) 14)



81 04256S0001EM

Lineaccessori Alfa Romeo includes a dedicated roof rack/ski rack for this vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

28) *After travelling for a few kilometres, check to ensure that the fixing screws for the attachments are well tightened.*
29) *Distribute the load evenly and pay attention to side winds when driving.*

IMPORTANT

13) *Never exceed the maximum permitted loads (see chapter "Technical specifications").*
14) *Fully comply with the regulations in force concerning maximum clearance.*

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION SYSTEMS

Petrol versions

The following systems are used for reducing petrol fuel engine emissions: catalytic converter, oxygen sensors and evaporation control system.

Diesel versions

The following systems are used for reducing Diesel fuel engine emissions: oxidising catalytic converter, exhaust gas recirculation system (EGR) and particulate filter (DPF).

30)

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF)

(Diesel Particulate Filter)

The Diesel Particulate Filter is a mechanical filter, integral to the exhaust system, that physically traps carbon particles present in the exhaust gases of diesel engines.

The diesel particulate filter is needed to eliminate almost all carbon particle emissions in compliance with current/future regulations and standards.

During standard use of the vehicle, the Powertrain Control Module records a set of data (e.g.: travel time, type of route, temperatures, etc.) and it will then calculate how much particulate has been trapped by the filter.

Since this filter physically traps particulate, it should be periodically regenerated (cleaned) at regular intervals by burning carbon particles.

The regeneration procedure is controlled automatically by the engine management control unit according to the filter conditions and vehicle use conditions.

During the regeneration there may be a limited increase in the engine idle speed, fan activation, a limited increase in fumes and high temperatures at the exhaust.

These are not faults; they do not impair normal vehicle performance or damage the environment. If the dedicated message is displayed, see contents of "Warning lights and messages" paragraph, in chapter "Knowing the instrument panel".

WARNING

30) *The catalytic converter and particulate filter (DPF) reach very high temperatures during operation. Therefore do not park the vehicle on flammable materials (e.g. grass, dry leaves, pine needles, etc.): fire hazard.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ACTIVE AERODYNAMICS

FRONT MOBILE SPOILER (Alfa Active Aero)

This is an automatic device, working at the vehicle speed, which allows higher reactivity at average speeds and higher vehicle stability at high speeds, regulating the air flow into the lower part of the vehicle.

The system is not active in temperatures near or below zero, or when the "Alfa DNA™ Pro" selector is in the "Normal" or "Advanced Efficiency" positions.

82 04296S0001EM

In case of a faults, the generic failure icon along with a message which identifies the type of malfunction, light up on the instrument panel display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This page is intentionally left blank

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This section of the handbook gives you all the information you need to understand, interpret and use the instrument panel correctly.

KNOWING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL

CONTROL PANEL AND ON-BOARD INSTRUMENTS 66
DISPLAY 70
WARNING LIGHTS AND MESSAGES 76
EOBD SYSTEM (European On Board Diagnosis) 99

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CONTROL PANEL AND ON-BOARD INSTRUMENTS

3.5" TFT DISPLAY

83 05026S0001EM

1. Rev counter 2. Digital engine oil temperature gauge with overheating warning light 3. TFT Display 4. Digital fuel level gauge (the triangle on the left side of the symbol indicates the side of the vehicle with the fuel filler) 5. Speedometer (speed indicator)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

VERSIONS WITH 7" TFT DISPLAY

84 05026S0003EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Quadrifoglio version

85 05026S0004EM

1. Rev counter 2. Digital engine oil temperature gauge with overheating warning light 3. TFT Display 4. Digital fuel level gauge (the triangle on the left side of the symbol indicates the side of the vehicle with the fuel filler) 5. Speedometer (speed indicator)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REV COUNTER

This indicates the engine rpm

Adjusting instrument panel lighting (brightness sensor)

Inside the rev counter there is a light sensor capable of detecting environmental light conditions and adjusting the operating mode (night/day) and the brightness of the instrument panel and the Connect system display.

ENGINE OIL TEMPERATURE GAUGE

The digital bar indicator monitors the temperature of the engine oil and starts supplying indications when the fluid temperature reaches approximately 122°F (50°C).

Under normal usage, the digital scale should hover around the middle of the scale according to the working conditions.

The warning lights switches on to signal the excessive increase of the engine oil temperature.

In this case, immediately stop the engine and contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

FUEL LEVEL GAUGE

The digital gauge monitors the amount of fuel in the tank.

The warning light switches on, a message is displayed and an acoustic signal is issued, when about 8 litres of fuel are left in the tank, for diesel versions, and about 9 litres for petrol versions.

IMPORTANT If the warning light switches on, refuel at the earliest opportunity.

IMPORTANT Do not travel with the fuel tank almost empty: any gaps in fuel supply could damage the catalytic converter.

SPEEDOMETER (SPEED INDICATOR)

This shows the speed of the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DISPLAY

DESCRIPTION

The vehicle can be equipped with a 3.5" or 7" TFT Display.

When one of the doors is opened/closed, with the engine stopped, the display is activated, showing the total mileage for a few seconds.

RECONFIGURABLE TFT DISPLAY

During operation, the display is divided into multiple sections which show driving data, warnings and failure indications. fig. 86 shows the display layout, identifying the various sections.

86 05036S0001EM

1. Gearbox information. 2. Front, side anti-collision systems, Cruise Control. 3. Speed limit warning light. 4. Reconfigurable main area. 5. Compass. 6. Odometer. 7. Failure warning lights. 8. Range (7" TFT Display only). 9. Warning lights (7" TFT Display only).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1 Gearbox Information

Automatic transmission

Displays the following information regarding the gearbox operation:
❒ gearbox operation mode (M, P, R, N, D). In D mode, when changing gear using the steering wheel lever (where present), or manually M, it also show the gear engaged with a number. In M mode, it indicates whether it needs to be shifted by one gear (single arrow suggests one gear) or by two gears (double arrow suggests two gears) both up and down.

Manual gearbox

Displays the following information regarding the gearbox operation:
❒ the gear engaged (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, N or R) and indicates whether it needs to be shifted by one gear (single arrow suggests one gear) or by two gears (double arrow suggests two gears) both up and down.

2 Front, side anti-collision systems, Cruise Control

Displays the operation the following modes:
❒ Forward Collision Warning (FCW);
❒ Lane Departure Warning (LDW);
❒ Cruise Control (CC) or Active Cruise Control (ACC) (where provided).

For further information, see relevant paragraphs.

3 Speed limit warning light

Shows information regarding the Speed Limiter function.

For further information, see relevant paragraph.

4 Reconfigurable main area

Can display the following screens:
❒ Home.
❒ Trip A.
❒ Trip B (can be activated/deactivated on the Connect system)
❒ Performance.

The screens can be selected, on rotation, by pressing the button shown in fig. 87.

87 05036S0002EM

Depending on the chosen driving mode (Dynamic, Normal, Advanced Efficiency and RACE), which can be selected through the "Alfa DNA™ Pro" system, the screens can be graphically different. Navigation instructions and call information can be repeated, besides on the Connect system display, also in this area of the display, these functions can be set on the Connect system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Home

The parameters shown on the display, for the modes: Dynamic, Normal and Advanced Efficiency are:

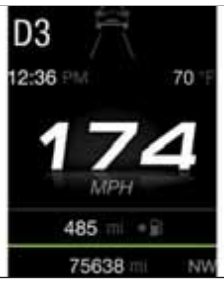
❒ Time fig. 88 or fig. 89 (on the 3.5" FT display shown only if the Phone function fig. 90 repeat mode has not previously been activated).

❒ Outside temperature (on the 3.5" FT display shown if the Phone function repeat mode has not previously been activated).

❒ Current speed (shown only if the repeat mode of the Phone and Navigation functions have not been previously activated).

❒ Range (on the 3.5" FT display shown if the Radio and Media functions repeat mode has not been previously activated).

3.5" TFT Display



88 05036S0003EM

7" TFT Display

89 05036S0104EM

90 05036S0030EM

In RACE mode (where provided) the consumption indication index is not active and a sports gearshift indicator is displayed. The sports gearshift indicator is represented by three yellow segments; if the third indicator, characterized by the wording "SHIFT", is on, it means that the gear should be shifted.

7" TFT Display

91 05036S0005EM

Trip A and B

The "Trip computer" can be used to display, for all driving modes (Dynamic, Normal, Advanced Efficiency and RACE) and with the ignition device ON, the measurements regarding the operating state of the vehicle. This function is characterised by two separate records, called "Trip A" and "Trip B" (the latter can be deactivated by Connect system), where the car's "complete missions" (journeys) are recorded in a reciprocally independent manner.

"Trip A" and "Trip B" are used to display the values relating to:

❒ Distance travelled

❒ Average fuel consumption

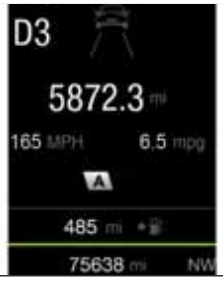
❒ Average speed

❒ Active trip

❒ Fuel consumption indicator (7" TFT Display only)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3.5" TFT Display



92 05036S0006EM

7" TFT Display

93 05036S0107EM

To reset the values, press and hold down the button on the right stalk fig. 94.

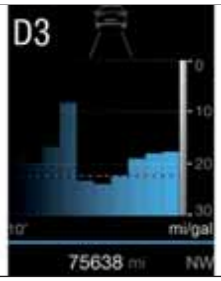
94 05036S0002EM

Performance

The displayed parameters are different in function from the active mode, and the modes can be selected through the "Alfa DNA™ Pro" system and are as follows:

❒ Normal,

3.5" TFT Display



95 05036S0008EM

7" TFT Display

96 05036S0009EM

The screen graphically reproduces some parameters closely linked to the efficiency of the driving style, with a view to limiting consumption.

❒ Advanced Efficiency,

3.5" TFT Display

97 05036S0010EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7" TFT Display

98 05036S0111EM

The three central icons on the screen indicate the effectiveness of the driving style, linked to the following parameters: acceleration, deceleration and gear shifts, with a view to limiting consumption. The bar below the icons shows current consumption and the green line represents the optimal area. The globe (7" TFT Display) lights up gradually according to lower consumption.

❒ Dynamic,

3.5" TFT Display

99 05036S0012EM

7" TFT Display

100 05036S0113EM

The displayed parameters are related to vehicle stability, the graphs illustrate the trend of the longitudinal/lateral accelerations (G-meter information), considering gravity acceleration as a reference unit.

Lateral acceleration peaks are also indicated.

❒ Race (where provided),

7" TFT Display

101 05036S0014EM

The displayed parameters are related to vehicle stability, the graphs illustrate the trend of the longitudinal/lateral accelerations (G-meter information), considering gravity acceleration as a reference unit.

Lateral and longitudinal acceleration peaks are also indicated.

5 Compass

Views the position indicating the cardinal point.

6 Milometer

Indicates the total kilometres (or miles) travelled.

7 Failure warning lights

Area dedicated to displaying failures, the following symbols could be displayed on rotation:

❒ Low criticality symbols (yellow amber).
❒ High criticality symbols (red).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

8 Range (7" TFT Display only)
Indicates the kilometres (or miles) left before the fuel tank is empty.

9 Warning lights (7" TFT Display only)
Displays the warning light related to the active mode among the following:
❒ low beam headlights;
❒ main beam headlights;
❒ Auto low beam headlights;
❒ Auto main beam headlights.

PARAMETERS SET BY USER

102 05036S0015EM

A series of functions programmable by the user can be set using the Connect system, this paragraph describes only the basic settings, such as:
❒ Units & Language;
❒ Time and Date;
❒ Cluster.

To access the list with the aforementioned items, proceed as follows: from the main menu, activated by pressing the MENU button fig. 103, select the function "Settings", by turning and pressing the Rotary knob.
Turn the Rotary Pad to choose the desired option and press to activate it.

103 05036S0040EM

Units & Language

104 05036S0016EM

The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected fig. 104:
❒ Units (by selecting this item you can choose between the metric, imperial or custom systems; this last option lets you set the measure unit for each individual size).
❒ Language (by selecting this item you can choose the system viewing language).
❒ Restore Settings (deletes the current settings and restores the factory settings).

To access and set the various functions, turn and press the Rotary Pad to select and confirm the selection.

Time and Date

105 05036S0017EM

The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected fig. 105:
❒ Sync with GPS Time (activates/deactivates the clock synchronization through the GPS; if the function is

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

deactivated, the options Set Time and Set Date are enabled).
❒ Set time (allows to manually set the time).
❒ Time format (allows to choose the time format between a 12-hour and a 24-hour clock).
❒ Set date (allows to manually set the date).
❒ Restore Settings (deletes the current settings and restores the factory settings).

To access and set the various functions, turn and press the Rotary Pad to select and confirm the selection.

Cluster

106 05036S0018EM

The following settings can be modified when this mode is selected fig. 106:
❒ Warning buzzer volume (allows you to set the volume of the warning buzzer on seven levels).
❒ Trip B (allows you to activate/deactivate the function).
❒ Phone repeat (allows to activate/deactivate the repetition of the Phone function screens on the instrument panel display as well).
❒ Audio repeat (allows to activate/deactivate the repetition of the audio (Radio and Media) function screens on the instrument panel display as well).
❒ Navi repeat (allows to activate/deactivate the repetition of the audio (Radio and Media) function screens on the instrument panel display as well).
❒ Restore Settings (deletes the current settings and restores the factory settings).

To access and set the various functions, turn and press the Rotary Pad to select and confirm the selection.

WARNING LIGHTS AND MESSAGES

IMPORTANT The warning light switches on together with a dedicated message and/or acoustic signal when applicable. These indications are indicative and precautionary and as such must not be considered as exhaustive and/or alternative to the information contained in the Owner Handbook, which you are advised to read carefully in all cases. Always refer to the information in this section in the event of a failure indication.

IMPORTANT The failure indicators appearing on the display are divided into two categories: very serious and less serious faults. Serious faults are indicated by a repeated and prolonged warning "cycle". Less serious faults are indicated by a warning "cycle" with a shorter duration. You can stop the warning cycle in both cases by pressing the button located on the windscreen wiper lever. The instrument panel warning light will stay on until the cause of the failure is eliminated.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING LIGHTS ON INSTRUMENT PANEL

Possible detailed messages and/or acoustic signalling can be matched to a few warning lights and symbols.

Red warning lights

Warning light	What it means	What to do
	INSUFFICIENT BRAKE FLUID / ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE ON The warning light switches on when the ignition device is brought to ON, but it should switch off after a few seconds.	
	Low brake fluid level The warning light turns on when the level of the brake fluid in the reservoir falls below the minimum level, possibly due to a leak in the circuit.	Go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked as soon as possible.
	Electric parking brake on The warning light switches on when the electric parking brake is engaged. **IMPORTANT If the car is parked on a gradient of more than 30% and/or the brake temperature is greater than 662°F (350°C), when the parking brake is engaged, the warning light will flash to indicate a potentially unsafe condition.**	Release the electric parking brake, then check that the warning light has switched off. If the warning light stays on, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.
ABS	EBD FAILURE The simultaneous switching on of the (!) (red) and (ABS) (amber) warning lights with the engine on indicates either a failure of the EBD system or that the system is not available. In this case, the rear wheels may suddenly lock and the vehicle may swerve when braking sharply.	Drive very carefully to the nearest Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system inspected immediately.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning light	What it means	What to do
	AIRBAG FAILURE The warning light switches on when the ignition device is brought to ON, but it should switch off after a few seconds. If the warning light switches on constantly, this indicates a failure in the airbag system.	31) 32)
	FRONT SEAT BELTS NOT FASTENED The warning light switches on constantly if the vehicle is stationary and the driver side or passenger side seat belt, with the passenger seated, is not fastened. The warning light flashes and a buzzer will sound if the vehicle is in motion and the driver side or passenger side seat belt, with the passenger seated, is not correctly fastened.	Fasten or check correct fastening of the front occupants' seat belts.
	EXCESSIVE ENGINE OIL TEMPERATURE The warning light switches on in the case of engine oil overheating.	15) If the problem persists, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

WARNING

31) *The fault of the warning light is signalled by the switching on of the icon on the instrument panel. In this case, the warning light may not indicate any faults with the restraint systems. Before proceeding, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked immediately.*
32) *If the warning light does not switch on when the ignition device is moved to ON or if it stays on when driving (together with the message on the display), there might be a fault in the restraint systems; in this case, the airbags or pretensioners may not deploy in the event of an accident or, in a lower number of cases, they could deploy erroneously. Before proceeding, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked immediately.*

IMPORTANT

15) *If the symbol switches on when driving, stop the vehicle and the engine immediately.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Amber warning lights

Warning light	What it means	What to do
	ABS FAILURE The warning light switches on when the ignition device is brought to ON, but it should switch off after a few seconds. The warning light switches on to indicate an ABS fault. In this case the braking system maintains its efficiency unaltered but without the advantage of the ABS system.	Drive carefully and contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.
	TPMS FAILURE The warning light switches on when a failure is detected in the TPMS. Should one or more wheels be fitted without sensors, the display will show a warning message until initial conditions are restored.	Do not continue driving with one or more flat tyres as handling may be compromised. Stop the vehicle, avoiding sharp braking and steering. Immediately restore the correct inflation pressure using the Tire Repair Kit (see "Repairing a wheel" paragraph in the "In an emergency" chapter) and contact the dedicated Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.
	Tyre pressure low The warning light switches on to indicate that the tyre pressure is lower than the recommended value and/or that slow pressure loss is occurring. In these cases, optimal tyre duration and fuel consumption may not be guaranteed.	In any situation in which the message on the display is "See manual", it is ESSENTIAL to refer to the contents of the "Wheels and rims" paragraph in the "Technical data" chapter, strictly complying with the indications that you find there.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning light	What it means	What to do
ESC	ESC SYSTEM When the ignition device is brought to ON, the warning light switches on, but should switch off as soon as the engine is started. **ESC system intervention**: Intervention by the system is indicated by the flashing of the warning light: it indicates that the car is in critical stability and grip conditions.	
	ECS system failure: If the warning light does not switch off, or if it stays on with the engine running, a failure was found in the ESC system.	In these cases, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.
	Hill Start Assist system failure: the switching on of the warning light indicates a Hill Start Assist system failure.	
ESC OFF	PARTIAL / TOTAL DEACTIVATION OF ACTIVE SAFETY SYSTEMS (where provided) When the ignition device is brought to ON, the warning light switches on, but should switch off as soon as the engine is started. The warning light switches on to indicate that some active safety systems have been partially or totally deactivated. For further details about the active safety systems see the "Active safety systems" paragraph in the "Safety" chapter. When the active safety systems are reactivated, the warning light switches off.	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning light	What it means	What to do
	INJECTION / EOBD SYSTEM FAILURE In normal conditions, when the ignition device is brought to ON, the warning light switches on, but it should switch off as soon as the engine is started. The operation of the warning light may be checked by the traffic police using specific devices. Comply with the laws and regulations of the country where you are driving.	16)
	Injection system failure If the warning light remains on, or it switches on whilst driving, the injection system is not working properly. The warning light on constantly signals a malfunction in the supply/ignition system which could cause high exhaust emissions, a possible loss of performance, poor driveability and high consumption. The warning light switches off if the malfunction disappears, but is still stored by the system.	Under these conditions, the vehicle can continue travelling at moderate speed but without demanding excessive effort from the engine or high speed. Prolonged use of the car with the warning light on constantly may cause damage. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.
	Catalytic converter damaged If the warning light flashes, it means that the catalytic converter may be damaged.	Release the accelerator pedal to lower the speed of the engine until the warning light stops flashing. Continue the journey at moderate speed, trying to avoid driving conditions that may cause further flashing and contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.

IMPORTANT

16) *If, turning the ignition device to ON, the warning light does not turn on or if it turns on steadily or flashing when travelling (on some versions together with the message on the display), contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning light	What it means	What to do
	REAR FOG LIGHT The warning light switches on when the rear fog light is activated.	
OFF	FORWARD COLLISION WARNING SYSTEM (FCW) (where available) This warning light informs the driver that the frontal collision alarm function is not enabled.	
	FUEL RESERVE / LIMITED RANGE The warning light (or the icon on the display) switches on when there are about 8 litres of fuel left in the tank, for diesel versions, and about 9 litres of fuel for petrol versions.	33)

WARNING

33) *If the warning light (or the icon on the display) flashes whilst driving, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Green warning lights

Warning light	What it means	What to do
	SIDE LIGHTS AND DIPPED BEAM HEADLIGHTS The warning light switches on when the side lights or dipped headlights are turned on. **"Follow me" function engaged** This function allows the headlights to remain on for 30, 60 or 90 seconds after the ignition device was placed in STOP position.	
	FRONT FOG LIGHTS The warning light comes on when the front fog lights are turned on.	
	LEFT DIRECTION INDICATOR The warning light switches on when the direction indicator control stalk is moved downwards or, together with the right direction indicator, when the hazard warning light button is pressed.	
	RIGHT DIRECTION INDICATOR The warning light switches on when the direction indicator control stalk is moved upwards or, together with the left direction indicator, when the hazard warning light button is pressed.	
	AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM HEADLIGHTS (on 3.5" TFT Display) This warning light comes on when the automatic main beam headlights are activated.	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Blue warning lights

Warning light	What it means	What to do
	MAIN BEAM HEADLIGHTS (on 3.5" TFT display) The symbol comes on when the main beam headlights are activated.	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SYMBOLS ON THE DISPLAY

Red symbols

Symbol	What it means	What to do
	LOW ENGINE OIL PRESSURE The symbol switches on constantly when the system detects that the engine oil pressure is insufficient. **IMPORTANT Do not use the vehicle until the failure has been solved. The switching on of the symbol does not indicate the amount of oil in the engine: the oil level can be checked on the display upon entering the vehicle and also by activating the "Oil level" function on the Connect system. On the Quadrifoglio version, the oil level can also be checked manually.**	17)

IMPORTANT

17) *If the symbol switches on when driving, stop the engine immediately and contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Symbol	What it means	What to do
	ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE TOO HIGH The symbol lights up when the engine has overheated.	*In normal driving conditions*: stop the car, switch off the engine and check that the coolant level in the reservoir is not below the MIN mark. In this case, wait for the engine to cool down, then slowly and carefully open the cap, top up with coolant and check that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the reservoir itself. Also check visually for any fluid leaks. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership if the symbol comes on when the engine is started again. *If the vehicle is used under demanding conditions (e.g. in high-performance driving):* slow down and, if the warning light stays on, stop the vehicle. Stop for 2 or 3 minutes with the engine running and slightly accelerated to facilitate better coolant circulation, then turn the engine off. Check that the coolant level is correct as described above.
	POWER STEERING FAILURE If the symbol remains on, you could not have steering assistance and the effort required to operate the steering wheel could be increased; steering is, however, possible.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.
	DOOR OPEN The symbol switches on when one or more doors are not completely shut. An acoustic signal is activated with the doors open and the car moving.	Close the doors properly.
	BONNET NOT PROPERLY SHUT The symbol turns on when the bonnet is not properly closed, along with the icon, an image of the vehicle with an open bonnet appears on the display. A buzzer is heard when the bonnet is open and the vehicle is moving.	Close the bonnet properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Symbol	What it means	What to do
	BOOT NOT PROPERLY SHUT The symbol turns on when the boot is not properly closed, along with the icon, an image of the vehicle with an open boot appears on the display. A buzzer is heard when the boot is open and the vehicle is moving.	Close the boot properly.
	AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FAILURE The symbol switches on, together with a buzzer warning, to indicate that the automatic transmission is faulty.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible. **18)**

IMPORTANT

18) *Driving the vehicle with this symbol on may severely damage the gearbox, with resulting breakage. The oil may also overheat: contact with hot engine or with exhaust components at high temperature could cause fires.*

Symbol	What it means	What to do
	INSUFFICIENT ENGINE OIL LEVEL The symbol switches on, along with the related message on the display, to indicate low engine oil level. On the Quadrifoglio version, the level must also be checked using the dipstick below the boot (see chapter "Servicing and care").	
	ALTERNATOR FAILURE The switching on of the symbol with engine on corresponds to an alternator failure.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Symbol	What it means	What to do
AST	ALFA™ STEERING TORQUE (AST) FAILURE The switching on of the symbol signals a failure in the automatic steering correction system.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked.
120	SPEED LIMIT EXCEEDED (where provided) The symbol switches on when the speed limit of 75 mph (120 km/h) is exceeded.	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Amber symbols

Symbol	What it means	What to do
	ENGINE IMMOBILIZER FAILURE / BREAK-IN ATTEMPT **Engine Immobilizer system failure** The symbol switches on to report a failure of the Engine Immobilizer system.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.
	Break-in attempt The symbol switches on when the ignition device is moved to ON position, to indicate a possible break-in attempt detected by the alarm system. **Electronic key not recognised** The symbol switches on when the engine is started and the electronic key is not recognized by the system. **Alarm system failure** This symbol switches on to report an alarm system failure.	
	FUEL CUT-OFF SYSTEM OPERATION The symbol switches on in the event of fuel cut-off system intervention.	For reactivating the fuel cut-off system, refer to the description in the "Fuel cut-off system" section in the "In an emergency" chapter. If it is not possible to restore the fuel supply, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.
	PARK SENSORS SYSTEM FAILURE Lights up when the system has failed or is not available.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked.
	POSSIBLE ICE ON ROAD The symbol turns on when the outside temperature falls to or below 3°C.	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Symbol	What it means	What to do
	ENGINE OIL DEGRADED (where provided) The symbol is displayed only for a limited time. **IMPORTANT After the first indication, each time the engine is started the symbol will continue to switch on as described above until the oil is changed.** If the symbol flashes, this does not mean that there is a fault on the vehicle, rather it simply reports that it is now necessary to change the oil as a result of regular use of the vehicle. The deterioration of engine oil is accelerated by using the vehicle for short drives, preventing the engine from reaching operating temperature.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible. 19)

IMPORTANT

19) *Deteriorated engine oil should be replaced as soon as possible after the symbol is switched on, and never more than 500 km after it first switches on. Failure to observe the above may result in severe damage to the engine and invalidate the warranty. When this symbol comes on, it does not mean that the level of engine oil is low, so if it flashes you do not need to top up the engine oil.*

Symbol	What it means	What to do
	GLOW PLUG PREHEATING (Diesel versions) This warning light comes on when the ignition device is brought to ON and will switch off when the glow plugs have reached the preset temperature. The engine can be started as soon as the warning light switches off.	**IMPORTANT In mild or high temperature conditions, the warning light comes on for a very short time only.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Symbol	What it means	What to do
	GLOW PLUG PREHEATING FAILURE (Diesel versions) The warning light will flash to indicate a failure in the glow plug preheating system.	In this case, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.
	ENGINE OIL PRESSURE SENSOR FAILURE The symbol switches on in the event of engine oil level sensor failure.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.
	ENGINE OIL LEVEL SENSOR FAILURE The symbol switches on in the event of engine oil level sensor failure.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.
	FORWARD COLLISION WARNING (FCW) SYSTEM FAILURE The symbol switches on in the case of failure of the Forward Collision Warning system.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.
	START & STOP EVO SYSTEM FAILURE This symbol switches on to report a Stop & Start Evo system failure.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible to have the failure eliminated.
	RAIN SENSOR FAILURE The symbol switches on in the case of failure of the automatic windscreen wiper .	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.
AUTO	DUSK SENSOR FAILURE The symbol switches on in the case of failure of the automatic low beam alignment.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.
	BLIND SPOT MONITORING SYSTEM FAILURE The symbol comes on in the event of a Blind Spot Monitoring system failure.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Symbol	What it means	What to do
	FUEL LEVEL SENSOR FAILURE The symbol switches on in the event of fuel level sensor failure	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.
	EXTERIOR LIGHTS FAILURE The symbol switches on to indicate a failure on the following lights: daytime running lights (DRLs) / parking lights / trailer direction indicators (if present) / trailer lights (if present) / side lights / direction indicators / rear fog light / reversing light / brake lights / number plate lights.	The failure may be caused by a blown bulb, a blown protection fuse or an interruption of the electrical connection. Replace the bulb or the relevant fuse. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.
	KEYLESS START SYSTEM FAILURE The symbol switches on in the event of Keyless Start system failure.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.
	FUEL CUT-OFF SYSTEM FAILURE The symbol switches on in the event of fuel cut-off system failure.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.
	LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (LDW) SYSTEM FAILURE The symbol comes on in the event of a fault in the Lane Departure Warning system.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.
AUTO	AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM HEADLIGHTS FAILURE (where provided) The symbol switches on to report a failure of the automatic main beam headlights.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible to have the failure eliminated.
	WATER IN DIESEL FILTER (Diesel versions) The symbol switches on constantly when driving, along to indicate the presence of water in the diesel filter.	20)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IMPORTANT

20) *The presence of water in the fuel system circuit may cause severe damage to the injection system and irregular engine operation. If the symbol is displayed contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible to bleed the system. If the above indications come on immediately after refuelling, water has probably been introduced into the tank: stop the engine immediately and contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*

Symbol	What it means	What to do
	DPF CLEANING (particulate trap) in progress (diesel versions with DPF only) The symbol comes on when the ignition device is brought to ON, but it should switch off after a few seconds. The symbol switches on constantly to indicate that the DPF system needs to eliminate the trapped pollutants (particulate) through the regeneration process. The symbol does not switch on during every DPF regeneration, but only when driving conditions require that the driver is notified. To turn off the symbol, keep the vehicle in motion until the regeneration process is over. On average, the process lasts 15 minutes. Optimal conditions for completing the process are achieved by travelling at 60 km/h with engine speed above 2000 rpm. When this symbol switches on, it does not indicate a fault and thus it should not be taken to a workshop.	
	AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID OVERHEATING The symbol switches on in the case of transmission overheating, after a particularly demanding use. In this case an engine performance limitation is carried out.	Wait for the symbol to disappear with the engine off or idling.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Symbol	What it means	What to do
	TRAILER LIGHT CONTROL UNIT FAILURE The symbol turns on to warn of failure in the control unit that manages the trailer lights.	Check that the trailer light is correctly connected to the socket. If the fault persists the next time you start the engine, contact the Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible to have the system checked.
	AUDIO SYSTEM FAILURE The symbol switches on to report a failure of the audio system.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible to have the failure eliminated.
	SPEED LIMITER SYSTEM FAILURE While driving, the symbol switches on to signal a Speed Limiter system failure.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible to have the failure eliminated.
	FUEL TANK CAP (where provided) Lights up if the fuel tank cap is open or not properly closed.	Tighten the cap properly.
	ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE FAILURE The switching on of the symbol and the message on the display signal a failure in the electric parking brake system. This failure may partially or completely block the car because the parking brake could remain activated even if automatically or manually disengaged using the relevant controls. In these circumstances, you can disengage the parking brake following the emergency disengagement procedure described in the "In an emergency" chapter.	If you are still able to drive the car (parking brake is not engaged), drive to the nearest Alfa Romeo Dealership and remember, when executing any manoeuvres/commands, that the electric parking brake is not operational. 34)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

34) *If a failure is present with sharp braking, the rear wheels may lock and the vehicle may swerve.*

Symbol	What it means	What to do
	INSUFFICIENT ENGINE COOLANT LEVEL (where provided) If the symbol switches on, it indicates a low engine coolant level condition.	Top up, as described in the "Servicing and Care" chapter
	ACTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM FAILURE While driving, if the warning light switches on it signals a failure in the Adaptive Cruise Control system.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked.
	WEAR ON BRAKE PADS Lights up when the brake pads have reached their wear limit.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible. **IMPORTANT Always use genuine parts or similar because the Integrated Brake System (IBS) system could detect anomalies.**
CCB	WEAR ON CCB BRAKE DISCS (where provided) Lights up when the carbon ceramic brake discs have reached their wear limit.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible. 35)

WARNING

35) *It is recommended to use only original or equivalent, bench-tested spare pads in order to ensure the original performance of the braking system.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Symbol	What it means	What to do
	DYNAMIC DRIVE CONTROL SYSTEM FAILURE The switching on of the warning light signals a failure in the dynamic drive control system.	
	WINDSCREEN WIPER FAILURE Signals a windscreen wiper failure.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.
	GENERIC INDICATION Signals information and failures. The accompanying messages describe the failure.	
AWD	FOUR WHEEL DRIVE FAILURE This symbol switches on to report a four wheel drive system failure.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible to have the failure eliminated.
	AFS SYSTEM FAILURE The symbol appears to indicate the automatic directional light system failure.	Go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked.
SOFT	SOFT SUSPENSION CALIBRATION INSERTION (where provided) Switches on when the most comfortable suspension setting is activated.	
	SHOCK ABSORBERS FAILURE (ADC) (where provided) While driving, if the symbol switches on, it signals a failure in the suspension system.	Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Symbol	What it means	What to do
	CLUTCH PEDAL (where provided) Lights up to alert the driver to press the clutch pedal in order to start the engine.	Press the clutch pedal.
	WINDSCREEN WASHER LIQUID LEVEL The symbol appears for some seconds to indicate that the level of the windscreen and headlight washing fluid (if any) is low.	Refill the liquid: to do this, please consult the "Level check" section in the "Service and care" chapter. Always use liquid with the features indicated in the "Liquids and lubricants" section in the "Technical information" chapter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Green symbols

Symbol	What it means	What to do
	LOW BEAM HEADLIGHTS (on 7" TFT display) The symbol comes on when the dipped beam headlights are activated.	
	START & STOP EVO OPERATION The symbol comes on in the case of Start & Stop Evo system intervention (stopping the engine). When the engine is restarted the symbol switches off (for the engine restarting modes see the "Start & Stop Evo" paragraph in the "Starting and driving" chapter).	
	CRUISE CONTROL SYSTEM The symbol comes on when the Cruise Control system is activated.	

Blue symbols

Symbol	What it means	What to do
AUTO	AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM HEADLIGHTS (on 7" TFT display) The symbol comes on when the automatic main beam headlights are activated.	
	MAIN BEAM HEADLIGHTS (on 7" TFT display) The symbol comes on when the main beam headlights are activated.	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EOBD SYSTEM (European On Board Diagnosis)

(where provided)

OPERATION

The EOBD (European On Board Diagnosis system) carries out a continuous diagnosis of the components of the vehicle related to emissions.

It also alerts the driver, by switching on the warning light on the instrument panel when these components are no longer in peak condition (see "Warning lights and messages" paragraph in this chapter).

The aim of the EOBD system (European On Board Diagnosis) is to:

- monitor the efficiency of the system;
- indicate an increase in emissions;
- indicate the need to replace damaged components.

The vehicle also has a connector, which can interface with appropriate tools, that makes it possible to read the error codes stored in the electronic control units together with a series of specific parameters for engine operation and diagnosis. This check can also be carried out by the traffic police.

IMPORTANT After eliminating a fault, to check the system completely, the Alfa Romeo Dealership is obliged to run tests and, if necessary, road tests which may also require a long journey.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This page is intentionally left blank

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The chapter that you are about to read is very important: it describes the safety systems with which the vehicle is equipped and provides instructions on how to use them correctly.

SAFETY

ACTIVE SAFETY SYSTEMS 102
DRIVING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS 105
OCCUPANT PROTECTION SYSTEMS 114
SEAT BELTS 114
SBA (Seat Belt Alert) SYSTEM 115
PRETENSIONERS 117
CHILD PROTECTION SYSTEMS 119
SUPPLEMENTARY RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS) - AIRBAG 131

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ACTIVE SAFETY SYSTEMS

The vehicle may be equipped with the following active safety devices:
- ABS (Anti-Lock Brakes);
- DTC (Drive Train Control);
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control);
- TC (Traction Control);
- PBA (Panic Brake Assist);
- HSA (Hill Start Assist);
- AST (Alfa™ Steering Torque);
- ATV (Alfa™ Active Torque Vectoring).

For the operation of the systems, see the following pages.

ABS (Anti-lock Braking System)

This system, which is an integral part of the braking system, prevents one or more wheels from locking and slipping in all road surface conditions, irrespective of the intensity of the braking action, ensuring that the vehicle can be controlled even during emergency braking and optimising stopping distances.

The system intervenes during braking when the wheels are about to lock, typically in emergency braking or low-grip conditions, when locking may be more frequent.

The system also improves control and stability of the vehicle when braking on a surface where the grip of the left and right wheels varies, or on corners.

The Electronic Braking Force Distribution (EBD) system completes the system allowing the brake force to be distributed between the front and rear wheels.

System intervention

The ABS equipped on this vehicle is provided with the "Brake by wire" (Integrated Brake System - IBS) function. With this system, the brake pedal command given by pressing the brake pedal is not transmitted hydraulically but electronically, therefore, the light pulsation that could be felt on the pedal with the traditional system is no longer perceptible.

36) 37) 38) 39) 40) 41)

DTC (Drive Train Control) SYSTEM

(where provided)

Some versions of this vehicle are equipped with an automatically activated/deactivated four-wheel drive system (AWD), which offers an optimal drive for countless driving conditions and road surfaces. The system reduces the slipping of the tyres to a minimum, automatically redistributing the torque to the front and rear wheels, as needed.

To maximize fuel savings, the vehicle with AWD automatically passes to rear four-wheel drive (RWD) when the road and environmental conditions are such that they wouldn't cause the tyres to slip. When the road and environmental conditions require better traction, the vehicle automatically goes to AWD mode.

42)

The driving mode, RWD or AWD, is shown on the instrument panel display.

IMPORTANT If the system failure symbol switches on, after starting the engine or while driving, it means that the AWD system is not working properly. If the warning message activates frequently, it is recommended to carry out the maintenance operations.

43)

ESC (Electronic Stability Control) SYSTEM

The ESC system improves the directional control and stability of the car in various driving conditions.

The ESC system corrects the car's understeer and oversteer, distributing the brake force on the appropriate wheels. The torque supplied by the engine can also be reduced in order to maintain control of the vehicle.

The ESC system uses sensors installed on the car to determine the trajectory that the driver intends to follow and compares it with the car's effective trajectory. When the real trajectory deviates from the desired trajectory, the ESC system intervenes to counter the vehicle's understeer or oversteer.

- *Oversteer*: occurs when the car is turning more than it should according to the angle of the steering wheel.
- *Understeer*: occurs when the vehicle is turning less than it should according to the angle of the steering wheel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

System intervention

The intervention of the system is indicated by the flashing of the ESC warning light on the instrument panel, to inform the driver that the vehicle stability and grip are critical.

44) 45) 46) 47) 48)

TC (Traction Control) SYSTEM

The system automatically operates in the event of slipping, loss of grip on wet roads (aquaplaning) and acceleration on slippery, snowy or icy roads, etc. on one or both drive wheels. Depending on the slipping conditions, two different control systems are activated:

❒ *if the slipping involves both drive wheels*, the system intervenes, reducing the power transmitted by the engine;

❒ *if the slipping only involves one of the drive wheels*, the BLD (Brake Limited Differential) function is activated, automatically braking the wheel which is slipping (the behaviour of a self-locking differential is simulated). This will increase the engine torque transferred to the wheel which isn't slipping.

System intervention

The intervention of the system is indicated by the flashing of the ESC warning light on the instrument panel, to inform the driver that the vehicle stability and grip are critical.

49) 50) 51) 52) 53)

PBA (Panic Brake Assist) SYSTEM

The PBA system is designed to improve the vehicle's braking capacity during emergency braking.

The system detects emergency braking by monitoring the speed and force with which the brake pedal is pressed, and consequently applies the optimal brake pressure. This can reduce the braking distance: the PBA system therefore complements the ABS.

Maximum assistance from the PBA system is obtained by pressing the brake pedal very quickly. In addition, the brake pedal should be pressed continuously during braking, avoiding intermittent presses, to get the most out of the system. Do not reduce pressure on the brake pedal until braking is no longer necessary.

The PBA system is deactivated when the brake pedal is released.

54) 55) 56)

HSA (Hill Start Assist) SYSTEM

This is an integral part of the ESC system and facilitates starting on slopes, activating automatically in the following cases:

❒ *uphill*: vehicle stationary on a road with a gradient higher than 5%, engine running, brake pressed and transmission in neutral or gear other than reverse engaged;

❒ *downhill*: vehicle stationary on a road with a gradient higher than 5%, engine running, brake pressed and reverse gear engaged.

When setting off, the ESC system control unit maintains the braking pressure on the wheels until the engine torque necessary for starting is reached, or in any case for a maximum of 2 seconds, allowing your right foot to be moved easily from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

When two seconds have elapsed, without starting, the system is automatically deactivated, gradually releasing the braking pressure. During this release stage it is possible to hear a typical mechanical brake release noise, indicating the imminent movement of the car.

57) 58)

AST (Alfa™ Steering Torque) SYSTEM

59)

The AST function uses the integration of the ESC system with the electric power steering to increase the safety level of the whole vehicle.

In critical situations (braking on surfaces with different grip conditions), through the AST function the ESC system controls the steering to implement an additional torque contribution on the steering wheel, to suggest the most correct manoeuvre to the driver.

The coordinated action of the brakes and steering increases the sensation of safety and control of the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ATV (Alfa™ Active Torque Vectoring) SYSTEM

The dynamic drive control is used to optimize and balance the drive torque between the wheels of the same axis. The ATV system improves the grip in turns, sending more drive torque to the external wheel.

Given that, in a turn, the external wheels of the car travel more than the internal ones and therefore turn faster, sending a higher thrust to the external rear wheel allows for the car to be more stable and to not suffer a phenomenon called "understeer". Understeer occurs when, during a turn, a car tends to widen the set trajectory, in this situation the lateral acceleration the car is subjected to becomes higher that the grip of the tyres, which are unable to maintain the car in the trajectory set by the driver through the steering angle determined by turning the steering wheel.

WARNING

36) *For maximum efficiency of the braking system, a bedding-in period of about 500 km (310 miles) is required: during this period it is advisable to avoid sharp, repeated and prolonged braking.*
37) *If the ABS intervenes, this indicates that the grip of the tyres on the road is nearing its limit: you must slow down to a speed compatible with the available grip.*
38) *The ABS cannot overrule the natural laws of physics, and cannot increase the grip available according to the condition of the road.*
39) *The ABS cannot prevent accidents, including those due to excessive speed on corners, driving on low-grip surfaces or aquaplaning.*
40) *The capability of the ABS must never be tested irresponsibly and dangerously, in such a way as to compromise personal safety and the safety of others.*
41) *For the correct operation of the ABS, the tyres must of necessity be the same make and type on all wheels, in perfect condition and, above all, of the prescribed type and dimensions.*
42) *There may be a brief delay in shifting to AWD mode after a tyre slipping event.*
43) *When a DTC system failure symbol appears, the driver must be aware of the different driving reaction and therefore reduce the speed. The symbol warns the driver not to drive in areas that require four-wheel drive or on snow-covered roads.*
44) *The ESC system cannot alter the natural laws of physics, and cannot increase grip, which depends on the condition of the road.*
45) *The ESC system cannot prevent accidents, including those due to excessive speed on corners, driving on low-grip surfaces or aquaplaning.*
46) *The capability of the ESC system must never be tested irresponsibly and dangerously, in such a way as to compromise personal safety and the safety of others.*
47) *For the correct operation of the ESC system, the tyres must necessarily be of the same make and type on all wheels, in perfect condition and, above all, of the prescribed type and size.*
48) *ESC performance features must not induce the driver to take unnecessary or unwarranted risks. Your driving style must always be suited to the road conditions, visibility and traffic. The driver is, in any case, responsible for safe driving.*
49) *For the correct operation of the TC system, the tyres must of necessity be the same make and type on all wheels, in perfect condition and, above all, of the prescribed type and dimensions.*
50) *TC performance features must not induce the driver to take unnecessary or unwarranted risks. Your driving style must always be suited to the road conditions, visibility and traffic. The driver is, in any case, responsible for safe driving.*
51) *The TC system cannot overrule the natural laws of physics, and cannot increase the grip available according to the condition of the road.*
52) *The TC system cannot prevent accidents, including those due to excessive speed on corners, driving on low-grip surfaces or aquaplaning.*
53) *The capability of the TC must never be tested irresponsibly and dangerously, in such a way as to compromise personal safety and the safety of others.*
54) *The PBA system cannot overrule the natural laws of physics, and cannot increase the grip available according to the condition of the road.*
55) *The PBA system cannot prevent accidents, including those due to excessive speed on corners, driving on low-grip surfaces or aquaplaning.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

56) *The capability of the PBA system must never be tested irresponsibly and dangerously, in such a way as to compromise the safety of the driver, the other occupants of the vehicle or any other road user.*
57) *The HSA system is not a parking brake; therefore, never leave the vehicle without having engaged the electric parking brake, turned the engine off and engaged first gear, so that it is parked in safe conditions (for further information read the "Parking" paragraph in the "Starting and driving" chapter).*
58) *There may be situations on small gradients (less than 8%), with vehicle laden, in which the Hill Start Assist system may not activate, causing a slight reversing motion and increasing the risk of collision with another vehicle or object. The driver is, in any case, responsible for safe driving.*
59) *The AST system is an aid for driving and does not relieve the driver of responsibility for driving the vehicle.*

DRIVING ASSISTANCE SYSTEMS

The vehicle can feature the following driving assistance systems:
❒ BSM (Blind Spot Monitoring);
❒ FCW (Forward Collision Warning);
❒ TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System).

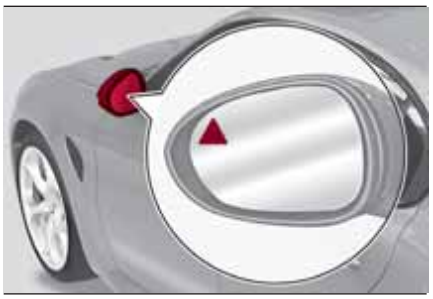
For the operation of the systems, see the following pages.

BSM (Blind Spot Monitoring) SYSTEM

The BSM (Blind Spot Monitoring) system uses two radar sensors, located in the rear bumper (one for each side - see fig. 107), to detect the presence of vehicles (vehicles, trucks, motorbikes, etc.) in the rear side blind spots of your vehicle.

107 06016S0001EM

The system warns the driver about the presence of vehicles in the detection area by lighting up, on the relevant side, the warning light located on the door mirror fig. 108.



108 06016S0002EM

When the engine is started the warning light turns on to signal the driver that the system is active.

Sensors

60)

The sensors are activated when any forward gear is engaged at a speed higher than about 6 mph (10 km/h), or when reverse is engaged.

The sensors are temporarily deactivated when the vehicle is stationary and the P (Park) mode active.

The detection area of the system covers about a lane on both sides of the vehicle (around 10 ft (3 m)).

This area begins from the door mirror and extends for about 20 ft (6 m) towards the rear part of the vehicle.

When the sensors are active the system

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

monitors the detection areas on both sides of the vehicle and warns the driver about the possible presence of vehicles in these areas.

While driving the system monitors the detection area from three different input points (side, rear and front) to check whether a signal needs to be sent to the driver. The system can detect the presence of a vehicle in one of these three areas.

IMPORTANT The system does not signal the presence of fixed object (e.g. safety barriers, poles, walls, etc.). However, in some circumstances, the system may activate in the presence of these objects. This is normal and does not indicate a system malfunction.

IMPORTANT The system does not warn the driver about the presence of vehicles coming from the opposite direction, in the adjacent lanes.

Important notes

If a trailer is hitched to the vehicle, the system automatically deactivates.

For the system to operate correctly, the rear bumper area where the radar sensors are located must stay free from snow, ice and dirt gathered from the road surface.

Do not cover the rear bumper area where the radar sensors are located with any object (e.g. adhesives, bike rack, etc.).

If, after purchasing the vehicle, you wish to install the tow hook, you need to deactivate the system via the Connect system. To access the function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Safety" and "Blind Spot Alert".

Rear view

The system detects vehicles coming from the rear part of your vehicle on both sides and entering the rear detection area with a difference in speed of less than 30 mph (50 km/h) with respect to your vehicle.

Overtaking vehicles

If another vehicle is overtaken slowly (with a difference in speed of less than about 15 mph (25 km/h)) and this stays in the blind spot for about 1.5 seconds, the warning light on the door mirror of the corresponding side lights up.

If the difference in speed between the two vehicles is greater than about 15 mph (25 km/h), the warning light does not light up.

RCP (Rear Cross Path detection) system

This system helps the driver during reverse manoeuvres in the case of reduced visibility.

The RCP system monitors the rear detection areas on both sides of the vehicle, to detect objects moving towards the sides of the vehicle at a minimum speed between about 0.6 mph (1 km/h) and 2 mph (3 km/h) and objects moving at a maximum speed of 22 mph (35 km/h), as generally happens in parking areas.

The system activation is signalled to the driver by means of a visual and acoustic warning.

IMPORTANT If the sensors are covered by objects or vehicles, the system will not warn the driver.

Operating mode

The system may be activated/deactivated via the Connect system. To access the function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Safety" and "Blind Spot Alert".

"Blind spot alert", "Visual" mode

When the system is enabled, a visual warning is sent to the door mirror on the side of the detected object.

The visual warning on the mirror will blink if the driver switches on the direction indicators, thus indicating the intention to change lane.

The warning will be fixed if the driver stays on the same lane.

"Blind spot alert" function deactivation

When the system is deactivated ("Blind Spot Alert" mode at "OFF"), the BSM or RCP systems will not emit neither acoustic warnings.

The BSM system will store the operating mode running when the engine was stopped. Each time the engine is started, the operating mode stored previously will be recalled and used.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FORWARD COLLISION WARNING (FCW) SYSTEM

60) 61) 62) 63) 64) 65)

21) 22) 23) 24) 25) 26) 27) 28) 29)

This is a driving assistance system composed of a radar located behind the front bumper fig. 109 and a camera located in the central part of the windscreen fig. 110.

109 06016S0003EM

110 06016S0004EM

In the event of an imminent collision the system intervenes by automatically braking the vehicle to prevent the crash or reduce its effects.

The system provides the driver with acoustic and visual signals through specific messages on the instrument panel display.

The system may lightly brake to warn the driver if a possible frontal accident is detected (limited braking). Signals and limited braking are intended to allow the driver to react promptly, in order to prevent or reduce the effects of a potential accident.

In situations with the risk of collision, if the system detects no intervention by the driver, it provides automatic braking to help slow the vehicle and mitigate the potential frontal collision (automatic braking). If intervention by the driver on the brake pedal is detected but not deemed sufficient, the system may intervene in order to improve the reaction of the braking system, therefore reducing vehicle speed further (additional assistance in braking stage).

The system will intervene automatically in case of imminent collision or impact against a pedestrian crossing the road (speed under 30 mph (50 km/h)).

IMPORTANT For safety reasons, when the car has stopped, the brake callipers may remain blocked for about 2 seconds. Make sure you press the brake pedal if the vehicle moves slightly forwards.

Engagement/disengagement

The Forward Collision Warning system can be deactivated (and then reactivated) via the Connect system. To access the function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Safety", "Forward Collision Warning" and "Status".

The system can be deactivated even with the ignition device ON.

IMPORTANT The system status can be changed with vehicle at a standstill only.

Activation/deactivation

The Forward Collision Warning system is activated whenever the engine is started regardless of that shown on the Connect system.

Following a deactivation, the system will not warn the driver about the possible collision with the preceding vehicle, regardless of the setting selected with the Connect system.

IMPORTANT Each time the engine is started, the system is activated regardless of where was when it was previously switched off.

This function is not active at a speed lower than 4 mph (7 km/h) or higher than 125 mph (200 km/h).

The system is active when:

- each time the engine is started;
- is active (ON) on the Connect system;
- the ignition device is at ON;
- the vehicle speed is between 4 (7) and

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

125 mph (200 km/h);
❒ the front seat belts are fastened;
❒ the "Alfa DNA™ Pro" selector is not in RACE position (where present).

Changing the system sensitivity

The sensitivity of the system can be changed through the Connect system menu, choosing from one of the following three options: "Near", "Med" or "Far". See the description in the Connect system supplement for how to change the settings.

The pre-set option is "Med". With this setting, the system warns the driver of a possible collision with the vehicle in front when that vehicle is at a standard distance, between that of the other two settings.

With the system sensitivity set to "Far", the system will warn the driver of a possible collision with the vehicle in front when that vehicle is at a greater distance, thus providing the possibility of acting on the brakes more lightly and gradually. This setting provides the drivers with the maximum possible reaction time to prevent a potential accident.

With the option set to "Near", the system will warn the driver of a possible collision with the vehicle in front when that vehicle is close. This setting offers the driver a lower reaction time compared to the "Med" and "Far" settings, in the event of a potential collision, but permits more dynamic driving of the vehicle.

The system sensitivity setting is kept in the memory when the engine is switched off.

System limited operation signal

If the dedicated message is displayed, a condition limiting the system operation may have occurred. The possible reasons of this limitation are something blocking the camera view or a fault.

In this condition it will still be possible to drive the car normally, but automatic braking will not be available in the event of an impending collision.

If an obstruction is signalled, clean the area of the windscreen indicated in fig. 110.

When the conditions limiting the system functions end, this will go back to normal and complete operation. Should the fault persist, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

System failure signalling

If the system switches off and a dedicated message is shown on the display, it means that there is a fault on the system.

In this case, it is still possible to drive the vehicle, but you are advised to contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.

Radar indication not available

If conditions are such that the radar cannot detect obstacles correctly, the system is deactivated and a dedicated message appears on the display. This generally occurs in the event of poor visibility, such as when it is snowing or raining heavily.

The system can also be temporarily dimmed due to obstructions such as mud, dirt or ice on the bumper. In such cases, a dedicated message will be shown on the display and the system will be deactivated. This message can sometimes appear in conditions of high reflectivity (e.g. tunnels with reflective tiles or ice or snow). When the conditions limiting the system functions end, this will go back to normal and complete operation.

In certain particular cases, this dedicated message could be displayed when the radar is not detecting any vehicles or objects within its view range.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If atmospheric conditions are not the real reason behind this message, check if the sensor is dirty. It could be necessary to clean or remove any obstructions in the area shown in fig. 109.

If the message appears often, even in the absence of atmospheric conditions such as snow, rain, mud or other obstructions, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership for a sensor alignment check.

In the absence of visible obstructions, cleaning the radar surface, by manually removing the decorative cover trim, could be required. Have this operation performed at an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

IMPORTANT It is recommended that you do not install devices, accessories or aerodynamic attachments in front of the sensor or darken it in any way, as this can compromise the correct functioning of the system.

Frontal collision alarm with active braking

(where provided)

If this function is selected, the brakes are operated to reduce the speed of the vehicle in the event of potential frontal impact.

This function applies an additional braking pressure if the braking pressure applied by the driver does not suffice to prevent potential frontal impact.

The function is active with speed above 4 mph (7 km/h).

Driving in special conditions

In certain driving conditions, such as, for example:

❒ driving close to a bend;

❒ the vehicle ahead is leaving a roundabout;

❒ vehicles with small dimensions and/or not aligned in the driving lane;

❒ lane change by other vehicles;

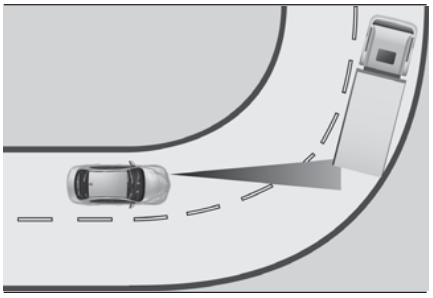
❒ vehicles travelling at right angles to the vehicle.

system intervention might be unexpected or delayed. The driver must therefore be very careful, keeping control of the vehicle to drive in complete safety.

IMPORTANT In particularly complex traffic conditions, the driver can deactivate the system manually through the Connect system.

Driving close to a bend

When entering or leaving a wide bend, the system may detect a vehicle that is in front of you, but that is not driving in the same lane fig. 111. In cases such as these, the system may intervene.



111 06016S0005EM

The vehicle ahead is leaving a roundabout.

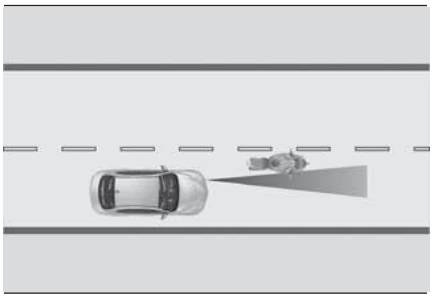
On a roundabout, the system could intervene if it detects a vehicle ahead that is leaving the roundabout fig. 112.

112 06016S0010EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicles with small dimensions and/or not aligned in the driving lane

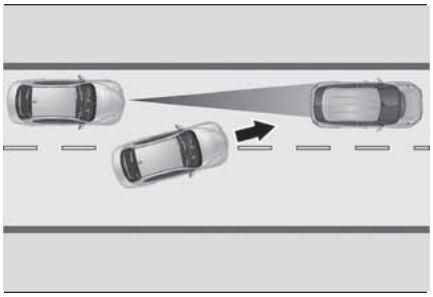
The system cannot detect vehicles in front of you that are outside the range of the radar sensor. Therefore it may not react to small vehicles, such as bicycles or motorcycles fig. 113.



113 06016S0006EM

Lane change by other vehicles

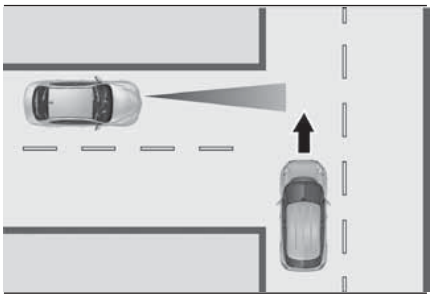
Vehicles suddenly changing lane, entering the same lane as your car and within the radar sensor's operating range, may cause the system to intervene fig. 114.



114 06016S0007EM

Vehicles travelling at right angles to the vehicle

The system could temporarily react to a vehicle that is passing through the radar sensor's operating range at right angles fig. 115.



115 06016S0008EM

Important notes

❒ The system has not been designed to prevent impacts and cannot detect possible conditions leading to an accident in advance. Failure to take into account this warning may lead to serious or fatal injuries.

❒ The system may activate, assessing the trajectory of the vehicle, for the presence of reflecting metal objects different from other vehicles, such as safety barriers, road signs, barriers before parking lots, tollgates, level crossings, gates, railways, objects near road constructions sites or higher than the vehicle (e.g. a flyover). In the same way, the system may intervene inside multi-storey car parks or tunnels, or due to a glare on the road surface. These possible activations are a consequence of the real driving scenario coverage by the system and must not be regarded as faults.

❒ The system has been designed for road use only. If the vehicle is driven on a track, the system must be deactivated to avoid unnecessary warnings. Automatic deactivation is signalled by the dedicated warning light/symbol switching on in the instrument panel (see the instructions in the "Warning lights and messages" paragraph, "Knowing the instrument panel" chapter).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)

66) 67) 68) 69) 70) 71) 72)

30)

The car is equipped with Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), which can advise the driver in the event of insufficient tyre pressure on the basis of the pressure when cold indicated in the "Technical specifications" chapter.

The system comprises a radio-frequency transmitter sensor fitted to each wheel (on the rim inside the tyre), which is able to send information on the inflation pressure of each tyre to the control unit fig. 116.

116 06016S0009EM

The inflation pressure varies, depending on the temperature, of about 0.07 bar (1 psi) every 43.7°F (6.5°C). This means that a decrease of the external temperature corresponds to a decrease of the tyre pressure. Always adjust the tyre inflation pressure when cold. This is defined as the tyre pressure after at least 3 hours of vehicle inactivity or travel of less than 1 mi (1.6 km) after the 3 hour interval.

The cold tyre inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the shoulder of the tyre: for further details see the instructions in the "Rims and tyres" paragraph, in the "Technical data" chapter.

Tyre pressure increases when the vehicle is driven. This is normal, and no adjustment of the pressure is required.

The TPMS signals the driver a possible insufficient pressure if this falls below the warning limit for any reason, including the effects of low temperature and normal loss of pressure from the tyre.

The TPMS will stop indicating insufficient tyre pressure when it is equal to or greater than the prescribed cold inflation pressure. Therefore, if insufficient tyre pressure is indicated (warning light on instrument panel on), increase the inflation pressure up to the prescribed cold inflation value.

The system automatically updates and warning light switches off each time the system receives the updated inflation pressures. The vehicle might need to be driven at a speed higher than about 15 mph (25 km/h) up to 20 minutes for the TPMS to receive this information.

Operating example

Supposing that the prescribed cold inflation pressure (i.e. vehicle stationary for at least 3 hours) is 2.3 bar (33.4 psi) , if the ambient temperature is 68°F (20°C) and the detected tyre pressure is 1.95 bar (28.3 psi), a temperature reduction of 19.4°F (−7°C) results in a decrease in tyre pressure, bringing it to approximately 1.65 bar (23.9 psi). This pressure is sufficiently low to activate the warning light.

Heating of tyres due to driving the vehicle may increase tyre pressure up to approximately 1.95 bar (28.3 psi), but the warning light will stay on. In this situation, the warning light will switch off only after the tyres are inflated to the prescribed cold pressure value for the car.

IMPORTANT The TPMS is designed for original tyres and wheels. The prescribed pressures and consequent alarm thresholds set in the TPMS are based on the dimensions of the tyres fitted on the vehicle. Using spare wheels of a size, type and/or design different from the original ones may cause an irregular operation of the system and damage the sensors. Aftermarket fitted wheels may damage the sensors. Using aftermarket tyre sealants may damage the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor. If aftermarket tyre sealant is used it is recommended to go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the sensors checked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

After checking or adjusting the tyre pressure, always refit the valve cap to prevent humidity and dirt from entering, these may damage the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System sensor.

INSUFFICIENT TYRE PRESSURE INDICATION

If an insufficient pressure value is detected on one or more tyres, the (!) warning light on the instrument panel switches on and the dedicated messages are shown on the display. The system also highlights the tyre or tyres with insufficient pressure graphically. An acoustic signal is also emitted.

In this case, stop the car, check the inflation pressure of each tyre and inflate them to the correct cold inflation pressure value, shown on the display or in the dedicated TPMS menu.

TPMS TEMPORARILY DISABLED

TPMS check message

If a system failure is present, the (!) warning light flashes for about 75 seconds and then stays on solid. An acoustic signal is also emitted.

A dedicated message and dashes "– –" instead of the pressure value are shown on the display, to indicate that detection is impossible.

When the ignition device is set to STOP and then back to ON, the indication sequence repeats provided that the failure is still resent.

The (!) warning light switches off when the failure condition disappears and the pressure value is displayed again in place of the dashes.

A fault in the system could occur in the following cases:

- strong radio-frequency noises could hinder the regular operation of the TPMS. This condition will be indicated by a dedicated message on the display. The message will disappear automatically as soon as the radio-frequency interference ceases to affect the system;
- aftermarket application of coloured films on the windows that interfere with the radio waves emitted by the TPMS;
- accumulation of layers of snow or ice on the wheels or the wheel arches;
- using snow chains;
- use of rim/tyre assemblies without sensors for TPMS;

After the punctured tyre has been repaired with the original tyre sealant contained in the TireKit, the previous condition must be restored, so that the (!) warning light is off during normal driving.

TPMS deactivation

The TPMS can be deactivated by replacing the wheels equipped with TPMS with others that are not (e.g. upon replacement of the wheel assemblies in winter) and if compatible with the country of purchase that makes this possibility available. Then drive for at least 20 minutes at a speed higher than about 15 mph (25 km/h).

The TPMS will emit an acoustic warning, the (!) warning light will flash for about 75 seconds, then will stay on constantly and the instrument panel will display the "TPMS check" message with some dashes (– –) instead of the pressure values.

From the following ignition cycle, the TPMS will not emit any acoustic signal and the display will not show the message "TPMS check", but the dashes will be still displayed instead of the pressure value.

WARNING

60) *The system is an aid for vehicle driving, it DOES NOT warn the driver about incoming vehicles outside of the detection areas. The driver must always maintain a sufficient level of attention to the traffic and road conditions and for controlling the trajectory of the vehicle.*

61) *The Forward Collision Warning (FCW) system is automatically deactivated when RACE mode is selected.*

62) *The system is an aid for the driver, who must always pay full attention while driving. The responsibility always rests with the driver, who must take into account the traffic conditions in order to drive in complete safety. The driver must always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

63) *If the driver depresses the brake pedal fully or carries out a fast steering during system operation, the automatic braking function may stop (e.g. to allow a possible manoeuvre to avoid the obstacle).*
64) *The system intervenes on vehicles travelling in the same lane. People, animals and things (e.g. pushchairs) are not taken into consideration.*
65) *If the car must be placed on a roller bench for maintenance interventions or if it is washed in an automatic roller washing tunnel with an obstacle in the front part (e.g. another car, a wall or another obstacle), the system may detect its presence and activate. In this case the system must be deactivated through the settings of the Connect system.*
66) *The presence of the TPMS does not permit the driver to neglect regular checks of the tyre pressure, including for the spare tyre, and correct maintenance: the system is not used to signalling a possible tyre fault.*
67) *Tyre pressure must be checked with tyres rested and cold. Should it become necessary for whatever reason to check pressure with warm tyres, do not reduce pressure even though it is higher than the prescribed value. Repeat the check when the tyres are cold.*
68) *Should one or more wheels be fitted without sensors, the system will no longer be available and a warning message will be shown on the display, until wheels with sensors are fitted again.*
69) *The TPMS cannot indicate sudden tyre pressure drops (e.g. if a tyre bursts). In this case, stop the vehicle, braking with caution and avoiding abrupt steering.*
70) *Changes in outside temperature may cause tyre pressures to vary. The system may temporarily indicate insufficient pressure. In this case, check the tyre pressure when cold and, if necessary, restore the inflation values.*
71) *Replacing standard tyres with winter tyres and vice versa requires TPMS system adjustment that must only be performed by Alfa Romeo Dealerships.*
72) *When a tyre is removed, it is advisable to replace the rubber valve seal as well: contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership. The fitting/removal of the tyres and/or rims require special care. To avoid damaging or fitting the sensors incorrectly, tyre and/or rim fitting/removal operations should only be carried out by specialised staff. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*

IMPORTANT

21) *The system may have limited or absent operation due to weather conditions such as: heavy rain, hail, thick fog, heavy snow.*
22) *The section of the bumper before the sensor must not be covered with adhesives, auxiliary headlights or any other object.*
23) *System intervention might be unexpected or delayed when other vehicles transport loads projecting from the side, above or from the rear, with respect to the normal size of the vehicle.*
24) *Operation can be adversely affected by any structural change made to the vehicle, such as a modification to the front geometry, tyre change, or a heavier load than the standard load of the vehicle.*
25) *Incorrect repairs made on the front part of the vehicle (e.g. bumper, chassis) may alter the position of the radar sensor, and adversely affect its operation. Go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership for any operation of this type.*
26) *Do not tamper with nor carry out any intervention on the radar sensor or on the camera on the windscreen. In the event of a sensor failure, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*
27) *Do not wash with high-pressure jets in the bumper lower area: in particular do not operate on the system's electrical connector.*
28) *Be careful in the case of repairs and new paintings in the area around the sensor (panel covering the sensor on the left side of the bumper). In the event of a frontal impact the sensor may automatically deactivate and display a warning to indicate that the sensor needs to be repaired. Even without a malfunction warning, deactivate the system operation if you think that the position of the radar sensor has changed (e.g. due to low-speed frontal impact as during parking manoeuvres). In these cases, go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the radar sensor realigned or replaced.*
29) *When towing a trailer, a vehicle or during loading manoeuvres on a vehicle transporter (or in vehicle for transport), the system must be deactivated via the Connect system.*
30) *The Tire Repair Kit, provided with the vehicle, is compatible with the TPMS sensors. Using sealants different from that in the original kit may compromise its operation. If sealants not equivalent with the original ones are used, it is recommended to have the TPMS sensor operation checked by a qualified repair centre.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OCCUPANT PROTECTION SYSTEMS

Some of the most important safety equipment of the vehicle comprise the following protection systems:

- seat belts;
- SBA (Seat Belt Alert) System;
- head restraints;
- child restraint systems;
- Front airbags and side bags.

Read the information given the following pages with the utmost care. It is of fundamental importance that the protection systems are used in the correct way to guarantee the maximum possible safety level for the driver and the passengers.

For the description of the head restraint adjustment see the "Head restraints" paragraph in the "Knowing your vehicle" chapter.

SEAT BELTS

All the seatbelts have three anchoring points each with its own retractor.

The retractor mechanism operates locking the belt in the event of sharp braking or strong deceleration due to an impact. This allows the belt strap to slide freely and to adapt to the body of the occupant. In the event of an accident, the belt will lock reducing the risk of impact inside the passenger compartment and of being projected outside the vehicle.

The driver is responsible for respecting, and ensuring that all the other occupants of the vehicle also respect, the local laws in force in relation to the use of the seat belts.

Always fasten the seat belts before setting off.

USING THE SEAT BELTS

The seat belt should be worn keeping the chest straight and rested against the backrest.

To fasten the seat belts, hold the tongue 1 fig. 117 and insert it into the buckle 2, until it clicks into place.

117 06056S0001EM

On removal of the belt, if it jams, let it rewind for a short stretch, then pull it out again without jerking.

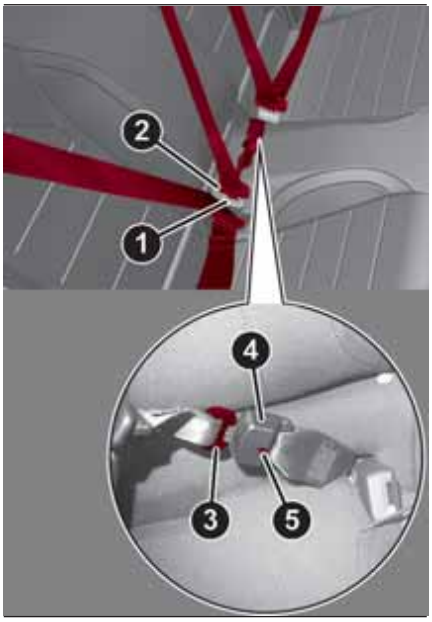
To unfasten the seat belts, press button 3 and guide the seat belt with your hand while it is rewinding, to prevent it from twisting.

73)

The retractor may lock when the vehicle is parked on a steep slope: this is perfectly normal. Furthermore, the reel mechanism locks the belt if it is pulled sharply or in the event of sudden braking, collisions and high-speed bends.

Wear the rear seat belts as shown in fig. 118 and fig. 119.

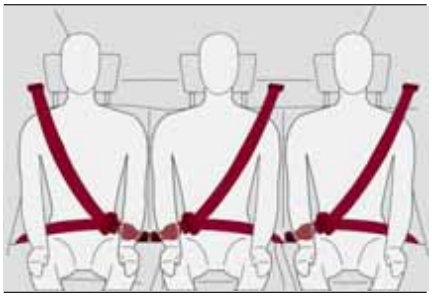
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



118 06056S0002EM

Unlike the side seat belts, the central rear one (where provided) has a double buckle. Unwind the belt, grasp the fastening tongue 3 fig. 118 and introduce it into its housing 4, then insert tongue 2 in housing 1; make sure that both belts are fastened correctly.

To release tongue 3 press button 5, using either belt fastening tongue.



119 06056S0003EM

74)

WARNING

73) *Never press button 3 when travelling.*
74) *Remember that, in the event of an accident, the rear seat passengers not wearing seat belts are exposed to a very serious risk and also represent a serious danger for the front seat occupants.*

SBA (Seat Belt Alert) SYSTEM

The SBA system warns the passengers of the front and rear (where provided) seats if their seat belt is not fastened.

The system signals unfastened seat belts with visual warnings (warning lights on in the instrument panel and icons on the display) and an acoustic signal (see the following paragraphs).

NOTE Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to deactivate the acoustic warning. The acoustic warning can be reactivated at any time through the Connect system.

FRONT SEAT BELT WARNING LIGHT BEHAVIOUR

When the ignition key is turned to ON, the warning light (see fig. 120) lights up for a few seconds, regardless of the status of the front seat belts.

With vehicle at a standstill, if the driver side seat belt or the passenger side seat belt (with occupant seated) is unfastened, the warning light stays on constantly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

120 06066S0001EM

As soon as the threshold of 5 mph (8 km/h) is exceeded for a few seconds (variable according to the vehicle conditions) with driver or passenger side (with passenger seated) seat belts unfastened, an acoustic warning is activated together with the flashing of the warning light for approximately 105 seconds.

When this cycle of warnings is activated it will stay on for its entire length (regardless of the vehicle speed) or until the seat belts are fastened again.

When the reverse is engaged, during the cycle of warnings, the acoustic signal is deactivated and the warning light turns on constantly. The cycle of warnings will be reactivated as soon as speed exceeds 5 mph (8 km/h) again.

REAR SEAT BELT ICON BEHAVIOUR

(where provided)

The icons are shown on the display (fig. 121) after a few seconds have elapsed since the ignition device is turned to ON and disappear after approximately 30 seconds.

After a door closes, or following a change in belt fastening status, the icons are shown again for approximately 30 seconds before disappearing.

The icons shown on the display indicate:

1 - rear left *seat belt*;

2 - rear central *seat belt*, (where provided);

3 - rear right *seat belt*.

121 06066S0002EM

The icons are displayed according to the corresponding seat belts in the rear seats, and stay on for about 30 seconds from the last seat belt status change:

❒ *if the seat belt is fastened* the corresponding icon will be green;

❒ *if the seat belt is unfastened* the corresponding icon will be red.

If a rear seat belt is unfastened, an acoustic warning (3 "beeps") will be activated along with the relevant icon lighting up in the display.

Furthermore the icons will light up again for 30 seconds each time one of the rear doors is closed.

The visual indication (flashing red) will start and stop independently for each warning light if several seat belts are unfastened.

The icon will turn green after the corresponding seat belt has been fastened.

The rear seat icons will go out, regardless of the state of the belt (red icon or green icon), approximately 30 seconds after the last signal.

IMPORTANT NOTES

As far as the rear seats are concerned, the SBR system will only indicate whether the seat belts are unfastened (red icon) or fastened (green icon), not the presence of any passengers.

The warning lights/icons all stay off if all seat belts (front and rear) are fastened when the ignition device is set to ON.

For the rear seats, the icons will activate a few seconds after the ignition device has been turned to ON, regardless of the status of the seat belts (even if the seat

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

belts are all fastened).

All the warning lights/icons will come on when at least one belt changes from fastened to unfastened status or vice versa.

PRETENSIONERS

The vehicle is equipped with front and rear lateral seat belt pretensioners, which draw back the seat belts by several centimetres in the event of a strong frontal impact. This guarantees the perfect adherence of the seat belts to the occupant's bodies before the retention action begins.

It is evident that the pretensioners have been activated when the belt withdraws toward the retractor.

This car is also equipped with a second pretensioner on the front seat belts (fitted in the kick plate area). Its activation is signalled by the shortening of the metal cable.

A slight discharge of smoke may be produced during the activation of the pretensioner which is not harmful and does not involve any fire hazard.

The pretensioner does not require any maintenance or lubrication: any changes to its original conditions will invalidate its efficiency.

If, due to unusual natural events (floods, sea storms, etc.), the device has been affected by water and/or mud, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have it replaced.

IMPORTANT To obtain the highest degree of protection from the action of the pretensioner, wear the seat belt tight to the torso and pelvis.

LOAD LIMITERS

75)

31)

To increase safety in the event of an accident, the front and rear lateral seat belt retractors contain a load limiter which controls the force acting on the chest and shoulders during the belt restraining action in the event of a head-on collision.

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS FOR USING THE SEAT BELTS

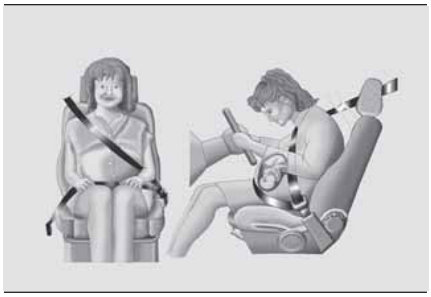
76) 77) 78)

Respect and ensure that all the other occupants of the vehicle comply with the local laws in force regarding the use of seat belts. Always fasten the seat belts before setting off.

Seat belts must also be worn by pregnant women: the risk of injury in the event of an accident is reduced for them and the unborn child if they are wearing a seat belt.

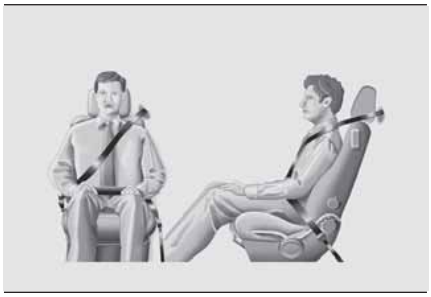
Pregnant women must position the lower part of the belt very low down so that it passes over the pelvis and under the abdomen fig. 122. While pregnancy progresses, the driver must adjust both seat and steering wheel to have full control over the vehicle (pedals and steering wheel must be easy to access). The maximum clearance should be kept between the abdomen and the steering wheel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



122 06076S0001EM

The seat belt must not be twisted. The upper part must pass over the shoulder and cross the chest diagonally. The lower part must adhere to the pelvis fig. 123, not to the abdomen of the occupant. Never use devices (clips, clamps, etc.) that hold the seat belt away from your body.



123 06076S0002EM

Each seat belt must be used by only one person. Never travel with a child sitting on the passenger's lap and a single belt to protect them both fig. 124. In general, do not place any objects between the person and the belt.

124 06076S0003EM

SEAT BELTS MAINTENANCE

For keeping the seat belts in efficient conditions, carefully observe the following warnings:

❒ always use the seat belt well stretched and never twisted; make sure that it is free to run without obstructions;

❒ check seat belt operation as follows: attach the seat belt and pull it hard;

❒ replace the belt after an accident of a certain severity even if it does not appear to be damaged. Always replace the seat belt if the pretensioners were deployed;

❒ prevent the retractors from getting wet: their correct operation is only guaranteed if water does not get inside;

❒ replace the seat belt when it shows wear or cuts.

WARNING

75) *The pretensioner may be used only once. After its activation, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have it replaced.*

76) *Removing or otherwise tampering with pretensioner and seat belt components is strictly prohibited. Any intervention on these components must be performed by qualified and authorised technicians. Always contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*

77) *For maximum safety, keep the backrest upright, lean back into it and make sure the seat belt fits closely across your chest and pelvis. Always fasten the seat belts for both the front and rear seats! Travelling without wearing seat belts will increase the risk of serious injury and even death in the event of an accident.*

78) *If the belt has been subjected to high levels of stress, for example after an accident, it should be changed completely together with the attachments, attachment fixing screws and the pretensioner. In fact, even if the belt has no visible defects, it may have lost its resilience.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IMPORTANT

31) *Operations which lead to impacts, vibrations or localised heating (over 100°C for a maximum of six hours) in the area around the pretensioner may cause damage or make it deploy. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership should intervention be necessary on these components.*

CHILD PROTECTION SYSTEMS

CARRYING CHILDREN SAFELY

79) 80) 81) 82)

For optimal protection in the event of an impact, all occupants must be seated and wearing adequate restraint systems, including newborn and other children!

This prescription is compulsory in all EC countries according to EC Directive 2003/20/EC.

Children below the height of 60 in (1.50 m) and up to 12 years must be protected with suitable restraint systems and be seated on the rear seats.

Statistics on accidents indicate that the rear seats offer greater safety for children.

Compared with an adult, a child's head is larger and heavier in proportion to their body and the child's muscular and bone structures are not fully developed. Therefore, correct restraint systems other than adult seat belts are necessary, to reduce as much as possible the risk of injuries in the event of an accident, braking or sudden manoeuvre.

Children must be seated safely and comfortably. Depending on the characteristics of the child restraint systems used, you are advised to keep children in rearward facing child restraint systems for as long as possible (at least until 3-4 years old), since this is the most protected position in the event of an impact.

The choice of the most suitable child restraint system depends on the weight and size of the child. There are various types of child restraint systems, which can be secured to the vehicle by means of the seat belts or with the ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages.

It is recommended to always choose the restraint system most suitable for the child; for this reason always refer to the Owner Handbook provided with the child restraint system, to be sure that it is of the right type for the children it is intended for.

In Europe the characteristics of child restraint systems are ruled by the regulation ECE-R44, dividing them into five weight groups:

Group	Weight groups
Group 0	up to 22 lb (10 kg) in weight
Group 0+	up to 29 lb (13 kg) in weight
Group 1	22-40 lb (9-18 kg)
Group 2	33-55 lb (15-25 kg)
Group 3	48-80 lb (22-36 kg)

The ECE-R44 standard was recently paired with the ECE R-129 regulation, which defines the characteristics of the new i-Size child restraint systems (see the "Suitability of passenger seats for i-Size child restraint system use"

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

paragraph for more information).

All restraint devices must bear the certification data, together with the control mark, on a label solidly fixed to the child restraint system which must never be removed.

Lineaccessori includes child restraint systems for each weight group. These devices are recommended having been specifically tested for Alfa Romeo cars.

FITTING A CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM WITH SEAT BELTS

The Universal child restraint systems installed with the seat belts only are type-approved on the basis of the ECE R44 standard and are divided into various weight groups.

83) 84) 85) 86)

IMPORTANT The figures are indicative and provided for assembly purposes only. Fit the child restraint system according to the instructions, which must be included.

Group 0 and 0+

Babies weighing up to 29 lb (13 kg) must be carried with a rear facing child restraint system of a type as shown in fig. 125 which, supporting the head, does not induce stress on the neck in the event of sudden decelerations.

125 06086S0001EM

The child restraint system is secured by the vehicle seat belts, as shown in fig. 125 and it must restrain the child in turn with its own belts.

Group 1

Children weighing 20 (9) to 40 lb (18 kg) can be transported in forward facing child restraint systems fig. 126.

126 06086S0002EM

Group 2

Children weighing 33 (15) to 55 lb (25 kg) may be restrained directly by the car seat belts fig. 127.

127 06086S0003EM

In this case, the child restraint system is used to position the child correctly with respect to the seat belts so that the diagonal belt section crosses the child's chest and not the neck, and the lower part is snug on the pelvis not the abdomen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Group 3

For children weighing 48 (22) to 80 lb (36 kg), there are dedicated restraint systems that allow the seat belt to be worn correctly.

The fig. 128 shows correct child positioning on the rear seat.

128 06086S0004EM

Children over 60 in (1.50 m) tall can wear seat belts like adults.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PASSENGER SEAT COMPLIANCE WITH REGULATIONS ON UNIVERSAL CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM USE

According to the European Directive 2000/3/EC the suitability of each passenger seat position for the fixing of universal child restraint systems is shown in the following table:

Positioning the "Universal" child restraint system					
Group	Weight groups	Front passenger		Rear passengers	
		Passenger airbags on	Passenger airbags off	Rear central passenger (where provided)	Rear side passengers
Group 0	up to 22 lb (10 kg)	X	U	X	U
Group 0+	up to 29 lb (13 kg)	X	U	X	U
Group 1	20-40 lb (9-18 kg)	X	U	X	U
Group 2	33-55 lb (15-25 kg)	U	U	X	U
Group 3	48-80 lb (22-36 kg)	U	U	X	U

X = Seat not suitable for children in this weight category.

U = suitable for child restraint systems of the "Universal" category, according to European Standard EEC-R44 for the specified "Groups".

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INSTALLING AN ISOFIX CHILD CARSEAT

87) 88) 89) 90) 91)

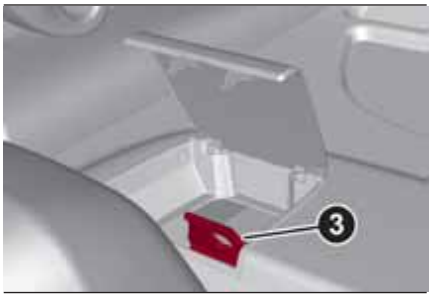
The rear side seats of the vehicle are equipped with ISOFIX attachments, for fitting child restraint systems quickly, simply and safely.

The ISOFIX system lets you install the ISOFIX child restraining system without using the car seat belts but connecting them directly to the carseat with three anchors in the car.

Traditional child restraint systems can be fitted alongside ISOFIX child restraint systems on different seats in the same vehicle.

To install an ISOFIX child restraint system, attach it to the two metal anchors 1 fig. 129 which can be reached lifting the doors 2 located behind the cushion of the rear seat, in the point where it meets the backrest, then fix the upper hook (available with the child restraint system) to the dedicated anchor "top tether" 3 fig. 130 located behind the seat headrest.

129 06086S0009EM



130 06086S0005EM

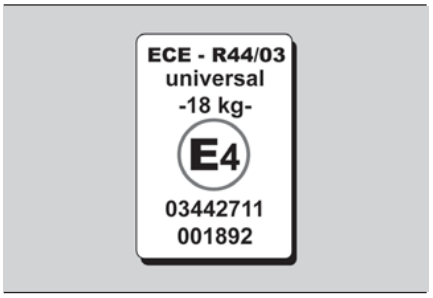
As an example, fig. 131 shows an example of a Universal ISOFIX child restraint system for weight group 1.

IMPORTANT The fig. 131 is indicative and for assembly purposes only. Fit the child restraint system according to the instructions, which must be included.

131 06086S0006EM

NOTE When a Universal ISOFIX child restraint system is used, only ECE R44 "ISOFIX Universal" (R44/03 or further upgrades) type-approved child restraint systems can be used (see fig. 132).

The other weight groups are covered by specific ISOFIX child restraint systems, which can be used only if specifically tested for this vehicle (see list of vehicles provided with the child restraint system).



132 06086S0007EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SUITABILITY OF PASSENGER SEATS FOR ISOFIX CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM USE

ISOFIX POSITIONS ON THE VEHICLE					
Weight categories	Size category	Device	Front passenger	Rear side passengers	Rear central passenger (where provided)
Group 0 (up to 22 lb (10 kg))	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X
Group 0+ (up to 29 lb (13 kg))	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL (*)	X
Group 1 (from 20 (9) up to 40 lb (18 kg))	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL (*)	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	IUF –IL	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IUF –IL	X
	A	ISO/F3	X	IUF –IL	X
Group 2 (from 33 (15) up to 55 lb (25 kg))			X	IL	X
Group 3 (from 48 (22) up to 80 lb (36 kg))			X	IL	X

X ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child protection systems for this weight and/or size category.
IL Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems of the "Specific for the vehicle", "Restricted", or "Semiuniversal" categories, approved for this type of vehicle.
IL (*) It is possible to install the ISOFIX child restraint system by adjusting the front seat (adjustment is not required if the "Sparco" Carbonshell Sport seats are installed).
IUF Suitable for forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the Universal category and type-approved for the use in the weight group.
X ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child protection systems for this weight and/or size category.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SUITABILITY OF PASSENGER SEATS FOR i-Size CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM USE

The rear side seats of the vehicle are type-approved to house the state-of-the-art i-Size child restraint systems.

These child restraint systems, built and type-approved according to the i-Size (ECE R129) standard, ensure better safety conditions to carry children on board a vehicle:

❒ the child must be transported rearward facing until 15 months;

❒ child restraint system protection is increased in the event of a side collision;

❒ the use of the ISOFIX system is promoted to avoid faulty installation of the child restraint system;

❒ efficiency in the choice of the child restraint system, which isn't made according to weight anymore but according to the child's height, is increased;

❒ compatibility between the vehicle seats and the child restraint systems is better: the i-Size child restraint systems can be considered as "Super ISOFIX"; this means that they can be perfectly fitted in type-approved i-Size seats, but can also be fitted in ISOFIX (ECE R44) type-approved seats.

NOTE The vehicle seats, i-Size type-approved, are marked by the symbol shown in fig. 133.

133 06086S0008EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The following table, according to European standard ECE 129, indicates the possibility of i-Size child restraint system installation.

	i-Size POSITIONS ON THE VEHICLE			
	Device	Front passenger	Rear side passengers	Rear central passenger
i-Size child restraint systems	ISO/R2	X	i-U	X
	ISO/F2	X	i-U	X

i-U: suitable for Universal i-Size child restraint systems, both rearward facing and forward facing.
X: seat not suitable for Universal i-Size child restraint systems.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS RECOMMENDED BY ALFA ROMEO FOR YOUR GIULIA

Lineaccessori Alfa Romeo includes a complete range of child restraint systems to be fixed using the seat belt with three anchorage points or the ISOFIX anchorages.

IMPORTANT Alfa Romeo recommends fitting the child restraint system according to the instructions, which must be included.

Weight group	Child restraint system	Type of child restraint system	Child restraint system installation
Group 0+: from birth to 29 lb (13 kg) from 16 (40) to 34 in (85 cm)		**PEG-PEREGO Primo Viaggio SL**	Universal/ISOFIX child restraint system. It must be installed rearward facing, using the vehicle seat belts only, or the dedicated ISOFIX K base (which can be purchased separately) and the vehicle ISOFIX anchorages. **Alfa Romeo recommends using the specific ISOFIX K base (which can be purchased separately) and the ISOFIX anchorages of the vehicle to install it.** With the base it must be fitted on the rear outer seats.
		ISOFIX Basic 0+1 K	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Weight group	Child restraint system	Type of child restraint system	Child restraint system installation
Group 1: from 20 (9) up to 40 lb (18 kg) from 26 (67) to 41 in (105 cm)		**Fair G0/1S**	Universal/ISOFIX child restraint system. It can be fitted using the vehicle seat belts (forward facing only) or using the ISOFIX anchorages of the vehicle. **Alfa Romeo recommends fitting it using the rear facing ISOFIX platform (A RWF type - to be purchased separately) or the forward facing ISOFIX platform (M - FWF type - to be purchased separately), the rigid head restraint (to be purchased separately) and the ISOFIX anchorages for the vehicle.** With the base it must be fitted on the rear outer seats.
		Reference 1: Fair ISOFIX RWF platform or **Reference 2: Fair ISOFIX FWF platform**	
Group 2: from 33 (15) to 55 lb (25 kg) from 37 (95) to 53 in (135 cm)		**TAKATA MAXI PLUS**	It can only be fitted facing forwards, using the three-point seat belt and the ISOFIX anchorages of the vehicle. **Alfa Romeo recommends to install it using the ISOFIX anchorages of the vehicle.** It must be fitted on the rear outer seats. **Alfa Romeo recommends to use the backrest at all times for children up to 53 in (135 cm) tall.**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Weight group	Child restraint system	Type of child restraint system	Child restraint system installation
Group 3: from 48 (22) to 80 lb (36 kg) from 53 (136) to 60 in (150 cm)		**TAKATA MAXI PLUS**	It can only be fitted facing forwards, using the three-point seat belt and the ISOFIX anchorages of the vehicle. **Alfa Romeo recommends to install it using the ISOFIX anchorages of the vehicle.** It must be fitted on the rear outer seats.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main recommendations to carry children safely

❒ Install the child restraint systems on the rear seat, which is the most protected position in the event of an impact.
❒ Keep children in rearward facing child restraint systems for as long as possible, until 3–4 years old if possible.
❒ If a rear facing child restraint system is installed on the front seat, passenger's side, it is recommended to remove the head restraint (refer to the procedure described in "Head restraint" paragraph, "Knowing your vehicle" chapter). The head restraint must be repositioned properly if no child restraint system is to be transported.
❒ If the passenger's front airbag is deactivated always check the warning light on the front dashboard to make sure that it has actually been deactivated.
❒ Carefully follow the instructions supplied with the child restraint system. Keep the instructions in the vehicle along with the other documents and this handbook. Do not use second-hand child restraint systems without instructions.
❒ Only one child is to be strapped into each restraint system; never carry two children using one child restraint system.
❒ Always check that the seat belts do not rest on the child's neck.
❒ Always check that the seat belt is well fastened by pulling on it.
❒ While travelling, do not let the child sit incorrectly or unfasten the belts.
❒ Never allow a child to put the belt's diagonal section under an arm or behind their back.
❒ Never carry children on your lap, even newborns. No one can hold a child in the case of an accident.
❒ In the event of an accident, replace the child restraint system with a new one.

WARNING

79) *SEVERE DANGER When a front passenger airbag is fitted, do not install rearward facing child restraint systems on the front passenger seat. Deployment of the airbag in an accident could cause fatal injuries to the child regardless of the severity of the collision. It is advisable to always carry children in a child restraint system on the rear seat, which is the most protected position in the event of a collision.*
80) *On the sun visor there is a label with suitable symbols reminding the user that it is compulsory to deactivate the airbag if a rearward facing child restraint system is fitted. Always comply with the instructions on the passenger side sun visor (see the "Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) - Airbag" paragraph).*
81) *Should it be necessary to carry a child on the passenger side front seat in a rear facing child restraint system, the passenger side front airbag and side bag must be deactivated through the Connect system main menu (see the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) - Airbag" paragraph), verifying deactivation by checking whether the* **OFF** *LED has illuminated on the front ceiling light. Move the passenger's seat as far back as possible to avoid contact between the child seat and the dashboard.*
82) *Do not move the front or rear seat if a child is seated on it or on the dedicated child restraint system*
83) *Incorrect fitting of the child restraint system may result in an inefficient protection system. In the event of an accident the child restraint system may become loose and the child may be injured, even fatally. When fitting a restraint system for newborns or children, strictly comply with the instructions provided by the Manufacturer.*
84) *When the child restraint system is not used, secure it with the seat belt or with the ISOFIX anchorages, or remove it from the vehicle. Do not leave it unsecured inside the passenger compartment. In this way, in the case of sudden braking or an accident, it will not cause injuries to the occupants.*
85) *After installing a child restraint system, do not move the seat: always remove the child restraint system before making any adjustment.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

86) *Always make sure that the chest section of the seat belt does not pass under the arms or behind the back of the child. In the event of an accident the seat belt will not be able to secure the child, with the risk of injury, including fatal injury. Therefore the child must always wear the seat belt correctly.*
87) *Do not use the same lower anchorage to install more than one child restraint system.*
88) *If a Universal ISOFIX child seat is not fixed to all three anchorages, the child seat will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously or fatally injured.*
89) *Fit the child restraint system when the car is stationary. The child restraint system is correctly fixed to the brackets when you hear the click. Follow the instructions for assembly, disassembly and positioning that the Manufacturer must supply with the child restraint system.*
90) *If the vehicle was involved in an accident of a certain severity, have the ISOFIX anchorages and the child restraint system replaced.*
91) *If the vehicle was involved in an accident of a certain severity, have both the child restraint system and the seat belt it was attached to replaced.*

SUPPLEMENTARY RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS) - AIRBAG

The vehicle is equipped with:
❒ front driver airbag;
❒ front passenger airbag;
❒ driver and passenger front side bags for pelvis, chest and shoulder protection (Side bags);
❒ side bags for head protection of front seat passengers and rear side seat passengers (window bag).

The location of the airbags on the vehicle is marked by the word "AIRBAG" in the middle of the steering wheel below the Alfa Romeo emblem, on the dashboard, on the side trim or on a label placed next to the airbag deployment area.

FRONT AIRBAGS

The front (driver and passenger) airbags protect the front seat occupants in the event of head-on crashes of medium-high severity, by placing the cushion between the occupant and the steering wheel or dashboard.

Therefore non-activation of airbags in other types of collisions (side impacts, rear shunts, roll-overs, etc.) does not indicate a system malfunction.

Driver and passenger front airbags are not a replacement of but complementary to the seat belts, which should always be worn, as specified by law in Europe and most non-European countries.

In the event of impact, those not wearing a seat belt are projected forwards and may come into contact with the bag which is still inflating. The protection offered by the bag is compromised in these circumstances.

Front airbags may not activate in the following situations:
❒ frontal impacts against highly deformable objects not involving the front surface of the vehicle (e.g. wing collision against guard rail, etc.);
❒ vehicle wedging under other vehicles or protective barriers (e.g. trucks or guard rails).

Failure to activate in the conditions described above is due to the fact that they may not provide any additional protection compared with seat belts, so their activation would be inappropriate.

In these cases, non-deployment does not indicate a system malfunction.

Driver's side front airbag

This consists of an instantly inflating bag contained in a special compartment in the centre of the steering wheel fig. 134.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

134 06106S0001EM

Passenger side front airbag

This consists of an instantly inflating bag contained in a special recess in the dashboard fig. 135; this bag has a larger volume than that of the driver's.

135 06106S0002EM

Passenger side front airbag and child restraint systems

Rearward facing child restraint systems must **NEVER** be fitted on the front seat with an active passenger side airbag since in the event of an impact the airbag activation may cause fatal injuries to the transported child.

ALWAYS comply with the instructions on the label stuck on the passenger side sun visor fig. 136, and shown in table fig. 139.

136 06106S0003EM

Deactivating/activating the passenger airbags: front airbag and side bag

(where provided)

For deactivating the passenger front and side airbags, on the Connect system, select the following functions in sequence from the main menu, which can be opened by pressing the MENU button: "Settings", "Safety", "Passenger airbag" which can be selected by turning and pressing the Rotary Pad fig. 137. The system will detect the activation/deactivation state of the airbags and confirm change of state. Press the Rotary Pad to continue.

137 06106S0007EM

The OFF and ON state LEDs are provided on the front ceiling light. Moving the ignition device to AVV, the two LEDs switch on for a few seconds. If not, contact a Alfa Romeo Dealership. During the first seconds, the activation of the LEDs does not actually show the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

passenger protection status, but only checks its correct operation.

After a test of a few seconds, the LEDs will indicate the status of the passenger airbag protection.

Passenger protection activated: the LED ON fig. 138 switches on.

Passenger protection deactivated: the OFF LED switches on with a steady light.

138 06106S0008EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Passenger side front airbag and child restraint systems IMPORTANT

I	RISCHIO DI FERITE GRAVI O MORTALI. I seggiolini bambino che si montano nel verso opposto a quello di marcia non vanno installati sui sedili anteriori in presenza di air bag passeggero attivo.
GB	DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY CAN OCCUR. NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur
F	RISQUE DE MORT OU DE BLESSURES GRAVES. NE PAS positionner le siège pour enfant tourné vers l'arrière, en cas d'air bag passager actif.
D	Nichtbeachtung kann TOD oder SCHWERE VERLETZUNGEN zur Folge haben. Rückwärts gerichtete Kinderrückhaltesysteme (Babyschale) dürfen nicht in Verbindung mit aktiviertem Beifahrerairbag auf dem Beifahrersitz verwendet warden
NL	DIT KAN DODELIJK ZIJN OF ERNSTIGE ONGELUKKEN VEROORZAKEN. Plaats het kinderstoeltje niet ruggelings op de voorstoel wanneer er een airbag aanwezig is.
E	PUEDE OCACIONAR MUERTE O HERIDAS GRAVES. NO ubicar el asiento para niños en sentido inverso al de marcha en el asiento delantero si hubiese airbag activo lado pasegero.
PL	MOŻE GROZIĆ ŚMIERCIA LUB CIEŻKIMI OBRAŻENIAMI. NIE WOLNO umieszczać foletika dzieciecego tylem do kierunku jazdy na przednim siedzeniu w przypadku zainstalowanej aktywnej poduszki powietrznej pasażera.
TR	ÖLÜM VEYA AĞIR ŞEKİLDE YARALANMAYA SEBEP OLABİLİR. Yolcu airbağı aktif halde iken çocuk koltuğunu araç gidiş yönüne ters biçimde yerleştirmeyin.
DK	FARE FOR DØDELIGE KVÆSTELSER OG LIVSTRUENDE SKADER. Placer aldrig en bagudvendt barnestol på passagerersædet, hvis passager-airbagen er indstillet til at være aktiv (on).
EST	TAGAJÄRJEKS VÕIVAD OLLA TÕSISED KEHAVIGASTUSED VÕI SURM. Turvapadja olemasolu korral ärge asetage lapse turvaistet sõidusuunaga vastassuunas.
FIN	KUOLEMANVAARA TAI VAKAVIEN VAMMOJEN UHKA. Älä aseta lasten turvaistuinta niin, että lapsi on selkä menosuuntaan, kun matkustajan airbag on käytössä.
P	RISCO DE MORTE OU FERIMENTOS GRAVES. Não posicionar o banco para crianças numa posição contrária ao sentido de marcha quando o airbag de passageiro estiver activo.
LT	GALI IŠTIKTI MIRTIS ARBA GALITE RIMTAI SUSIŽEISTI. Nedėkite vaiko sėdynės atgręžtos nugara į priekinį automobilio stiklą ten, kur yra veikiant keleivio oro pagalvė.
S	KAN VARA LIVSHOTANDE ELLER LEDA TILL ALLVARLIGA SKADOR. Placera aldrig en bakåtvänd barnstol i framsätet då passagerarsidans krockkudde är aktiv.
H	HALÁSOS VAGY SÚLYOS BALESET KÖVETKEZHET BE. Ne helyezzük a gyermekülést a menetiránnyal szembe, ha az utas oldalán légzsák működik.
LV	VAR IZRAISĪT NĀVI VAI NOPIETNAS TRAUMAS. Nenovietot mazuļa sēdekli pretēji braukšanas virzienam, ja pasažiera pusē ir uzstādīts gaisa spilvens.
CZ	HROZÍ NEBEZPEČÍ VÁŽNÉHO UBLÍŽENÍ NA ZDRAVÍ NEBO DOKONCE SMRTI. Neumísťujte dětskou sedačku do opačné polohy vůči směru jízdy v případě aktivního airbagu spolujezdce.
SLO	LAHKO PRIDE DO SMRTI ALI HUDIH POŠKODB. Otroškega avtomobilskega sedeža ne nameščajte v obratni smeri vožnje, če ima vozilo vgrajene zračne blazine za potnike.
RO	SE POATE PRODUCE DECESUL SAU LEZIUNI GRAVE. Nu aşezaţi scaunul de maşină pentru bebeluşi în poziţie contrară direcţiei de mers atunci când airbag-ul pasagerului este activat.
GR	ΜΠΟΡΕΙ ΝΑ ΠΡΟΚΛΗΘΟΥΝ ΘΑΝΑΤΟΣ Ή ΣΟΒΑΡΑ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΑ. Μην τοποθετείτε το καρεκλάκι αυτοκινήτου για παιδιά σε αντίθετη προς την φορά πορείας θέση σε περίπτωση που υπάρχει αερόσακος εν ενεργεία στη θέση συνεπιβάτη.
BG	ИМА ОПАСНОСТ ОТ СМЪРТ И СЕРИОЗНИ НАРАНЯВАНИЯ. Не поставяйте столчето за пренасяне на бебета в положение обратно на посоката на движение, при положение активно на въздушната възглавница за пътуване.
SK	MÔŽE NASTAŤ SMRŤ ALEBO VÁŽNE ZRANENIA. Nedávajte autosedačku pre deti do polohy proti chodu vozidla, keď je aktívny airbag spolujazdca.
RUS	ТРАВМЫ И ЛЕТАЛЬНЫЙ ИСХОД. Детское кресло, устанавливающееся против направления движения, нельзя монтировать на месте переднего пассажира, если последнее оборудовано активной подушкой безопасности.
HR	OPASNOST OD TEŠKIH ILI SMRTONOSNIH OZLJEDA. Sjedala za djecu koja se montiraju u smjeru suprotnom od vožnje ne smiju se instalirati na prednja sjedala ako postoji aktivni zračni jastuk suvozača.
AS	قد تحدث حالات وفاة أو إصابات بالغة. لا تستخدم مقاعد الأمان الخاصة بالأطفال على مقعد مزود "بوسادة هوائية"، حيث إن الطفل قد يتعرض للوفاة أو لإصابة بالغة.

139 J0A0215

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SIDE AIRBAGS

To help increase occupants protection in the event of side impact collisions, the vehicle is equipped with front side bags and window bags.

Side bag

These consist of two bags located in the front seat backrests fig. 140 that protect the occupants' pelvis, chest and shoulder area in the event of a side impact of medium/high severity.

They are marked by the "AIRBAG" label sewn on the outer side of the front seats.

140 06106S0004EM

Window bag

This consists of a "curtain" bag housed behind the roof side trim and covered by special trims fig. 141.

They are designed to protect the head of front and rear occupants in the event of a side collisions, thanks to the wide cushion inflation surface.

141 06106S0005EM

The deployment of side bags in the event of side impacts of low severity is not required.

In the event of a side impact, the system provides best protection if the passenger sits on the seat in a correct position, allowing the window bag to inflate correctly.

92) 93) 94) 95) 96) 97) 98) 99) 100) 101) 102) 103) 104) 105)

Important notes

Do not wash the seats with water or pressurised steam (wash by hand or at automatic seat washing stations).

The front and/or side airbags may activate in the event of sharp impacts to the underbody of the vehicle (e.g. impact with steps, pavements, potholes or road bumps etc.).

When the airbag deploys it emits a small amount of dust: the dust is harmless and does not indicate the beginning of a fire. The dust may irritate the skin and eyes however: in this case, wash with neutral soap and water.

Airbag checking, repair and replacement must be carried out at an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

If the car is scrapped, have the airbag system deactivated at an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

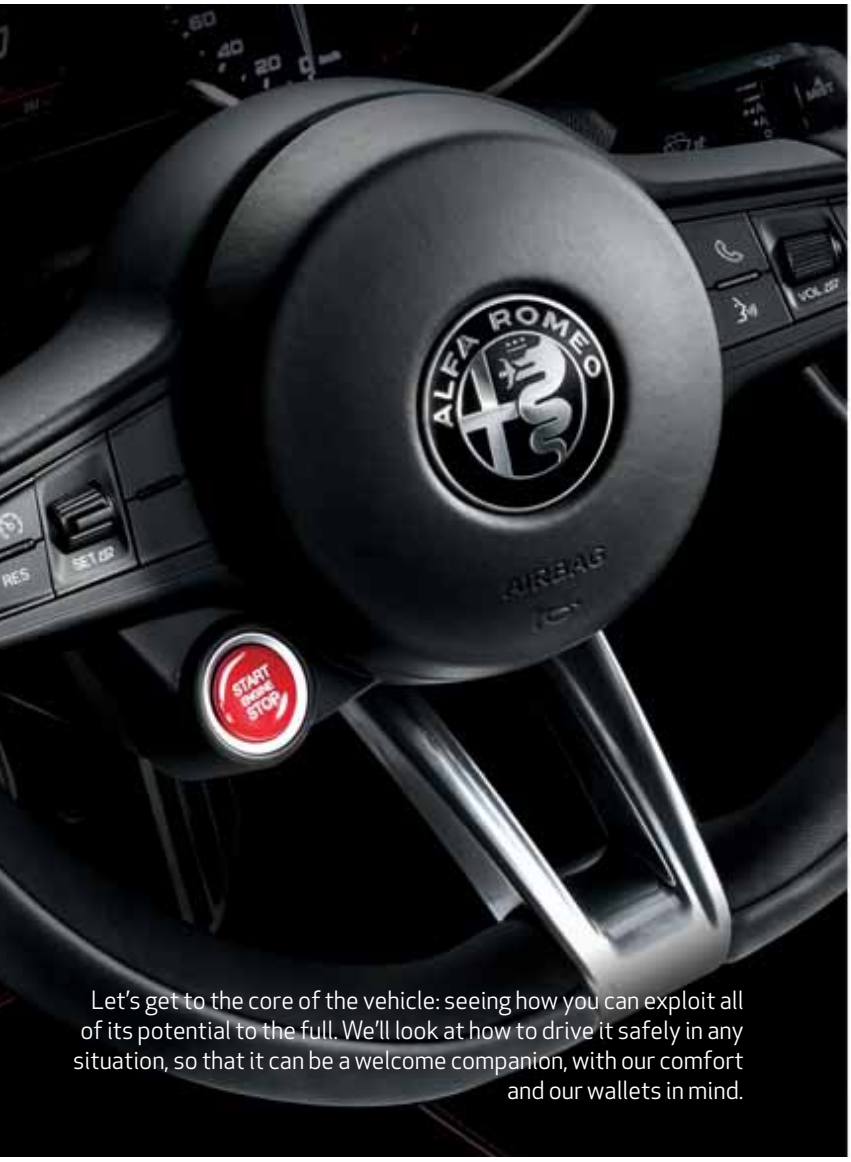
Pretensioners and airbags are deployed in different ways on the basis of the type of collision. Failure to activate one or more of the devices does not indicate a system malfunction.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

92) *Do not apply stickers or other objects on the steering wheel, on the dashboard in the passenger side airbag area, on side upholstery on the roof or on the seats. Never put objects (e.g. mobile phones) on the passenger side of the dashboard since they could interfere with correct inflation of the passenger airbag and also cause serious injury to the passengers.*
93) *Always drive with your hands on the rim of the steering wheel so that the airbag can inflate freely if required. Do not drive with your body bent forward. Keep your back straight against the backrest.*
94) *The passenger airbag can be deactivated on the Connect system by selecting the following functions in sequence on the main menu: "Settings"; "Safety"; "Passenger airbag" and "Deactivation".*
95) *Do not affix rigid objects to the garment hooks or support handles.*
96) *Do not rest your head, arms or elbows on the door, windows or the area in which the Window bag is located to avoid possible injury during airbag inflation.*
97) *Never lean your head, arms or elbows out of the window.*
98) *If, when the ignition device is turned to ON, the warning light does not switch on or stays on whilst driving, a fault may have occurred in the restraint systems. In this case the airbags or pretensioners may not be deployed in an impact or, in a lower number of cases, they may be deployed accidentally. Before continuing, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership immediately to have the system checked.*
99) *In case of a LED* **OFF** *failure (located on the front courtesy light), the warning light appears on the instrument panel.*
100) *On cars with side bags, do not cover the front seat backrests with extra covers.*
101) *Do not travel carrying objects in your lap, in front of your chest or between your lips (pipe, pencils, etc.): they could cause severe injury if the airbag is deployed.*
102) *If the car has been subject to theft, attempted theft, vandalism, or flooding, have the airbag system inspected at an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*
103) *Malfunction of the airbag failure warning light is indicated by the activation of an airbag failure icon and a dedicated message on the instrument panel display. The pyrotechnic charges are not disabled. Before continuing, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership immediately to have the system checked.*
104) *The airbag deployment threshold is higher than that of the pretensioners. For collisions in the range between the two thresholds, it is normal for only the pretensioners to be activated.*
105) *The airbag does not replace seat belts but increases their efficiency. Because front airbags are not deployed for low-speed crashes, side collisions, rear-end shunts or rollovers, occupants are protected, in addition to any side bags, only by their seat belts, which must therefore always be fastened.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Let's get to the core of the vehicle: seeing how you can exploit all of its potential to the full. We'll look at how to drive it safely in any situation, so that it can be a welcome companion, with our comfort and our wallets in mind.

STARTING AND DRIVING

STARTING THE ENGINE 138
ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE 140
MANUAL GEARBOX 143
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION 143
"Alfa DNA™ Pro" SYSTEM 148
ALFA ACTIVE SUSPENSION (AAS) 151
START & STOP EVO 152
SPEED LIMITER 154
CRUISE CONTROL 155
ACTIVE CRUISE CONTROL 157
PARK SENSORS SYSTEM 164
LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (LDW) SYSTEM 169
REAR BACK-UP CAMERA / DYNAMIC GRIDLINES 172
REFUELLING THE VEHICLE 173
SUGGESTIONS FOR DRIVING 175
TOWING TRAILERS 178
ASSEMBLY SCHEDULE 179

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STARTING THE ENGINE

STARTING THE ENGINE

Before starting the engine, adjust the seat, the interior rear view mirrors, the door mirrors and fasten the seat belt correctly.

Never press the accelerator pedal for starting the engine.

If necessary, messages indicating the starting procedure can be shown on the display.

PROCEDURE FOR PETROL VERSIONS

106) 107) 108)

32) 33) 35)

Versions with manual gearbox

Proceed as follows:

❒ engage the parking brake and place the gear lever in neutral;

❒ fully depress the clutch pedal, without touching the accelerator;

❒ briefly press the ignition button;

❒ if the engine doesn't start within a few seconds, you need to repeat the procedure.

If the problem persists, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

Versions with automatic transmission

Proceed as follows:

❒ engage the electric parking brake and set the gear lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral);

❒ fully depress the brake pedal without touching the accelerator;

❒ briefly press the ignition button;

❒ if the engine doesn't start within a few seconds, you need to repeat the procedure.

If the problem persists, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

STARTING PROCEDURE FOR DIESEL VERSIONS

34)

Versions with mechanical gearbox

Proceed as follows:

❒ engage the parking brake and place the gear lever in neutral;

❒ take the ignition device to the ON position: warning light ⌀ will come on in the instrument panel;

❒ wait for the warning light ⌀ to go off;

❒ fully depress the clutch pedal, without touching the accelerator;

❒ briefly press the ignition button;

❒ if the engine doesn't start within a few seconds, you need to repeat the procedure.

If the problem persists, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

Versions with automatic transmission

Proceed as follows:

❒ engage the parking brake and set the gear lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral);

❒ fully depress the brake pedal without touching the accelerator;

❒ briefly press the ignition button;

❒ if the engine doesn't start within a few seconds, you need to repeat the procedure.

If the problem persists, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

STARTING AFTER A LONG INACTIVITY

If the vehicle has not been started nor driven for at least 35 days, it is advisable to follow the indications below.

To start the engine, proceed as follows:

❒ briefly press the ignition button;

❒ if the engine does not start, wait 5 seconds and let the starter cool down and then repeat the starting procedure;

❒ if the engine does not start after 8 attempts, let the starter cool down for at least 10 seconds and then repeat the starting procedure.

If the problem persists, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

IMPORTANT After prolonged vehicle inactivity, very difficult starting, that can be noticed through rapid fatigue of the starter, might also be due to a partially flat battery. In this case, see the "Emergency starting" paragraph in the "In an emergency" chapter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE STARTING FAILURE

Important notes

Do not try to start the engine pouring fuel or other flammable fluid inside the throttle body air intake: this might damage the engine and injury people nearby.

Do not try to start the engine by towing or pushing the vehicle. This manoeuvre could let unburnt fuel enter the catalytic converter. When the engine is started, this would ignite, causing catalytic converter overheating and damage.

If the battery is flat, you can jump start the vehicle by connecting the battery with an auxiliary one or with one on another vehicle using suitable cables. This manoeuvre can anyway be dangerous when not performed correctly. See the indications in the "Emergency starting" paragraph in the "In an emergency" chapter.

Starting the engine with electronic key battery (Keyless Start) run down or flat

If the ignition device does not respond when the relevant button is pressed the electronic key battery might be run down or flat. Therefore, the system does not detect the presence of the electronic key on board the vehicle and displays a dedicated message.

In this case, follow the instructions in paragraph "Starting with flat key battery" in the "Knowing your vehicle" chapter and start the engine normally.

WARMING UP THE ENGINE AFTER IT HAS JUST STARTED

Proceed as follows:

❒ drive off slowly, letting the engine turn at medium revs. Do not accelerate abruptly;

❒ do not demand full performance at first. It is advisable to wait until the digital engine coolant temperature indicator starts moving.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

35)

To stop the engine, proceed as follows:

❒ park the vehicle in a position that is not dangerous for oncoming traffic;

❒ engage a gear (versions with manual gearbox) or engage the P mode (Park) (versions with automatic transmission);

❒ with engine idling, press the start button.

IMPORTANT Do not leave the ignition device in the ON position when the engine is off.

Vehicles with electronic key (Keyless Start)

If the vehicle speed is above 8km/h, it is still possible to stop the engine if a gear operating mode other than P (Park) is selected. To switch off the engine in this situation, hold down the ignition device button for a while or press it 3 times in a row within a few seconds.

With the Keyless Start system, it is possible to go away from the vehicle taking the electronic key with you, without the engine switching off. The vehicle will inform about the absence of the key on board, only if the doors are closed.

Stopping the engine (switching from the ON to the STOP position) the accessories are still powered for about 3 minutes.

When the driver side door is opened with instrument panel on, a brief acoustic signal will be emitted to remind the driver to stop the engine. The display will show a dedicated message.

When the starting device is at STOP, the electric windows can still be operated for about 3 minutes. Opening one of the front doors cancels this function.

After a demanding drive, before turning the engine off you should allow it to idle to allow the temperature in the engine compartment to decrease.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TURBO VERSION COOLING

Before switching the engine off, keep it idling for a few minutes so that the turbocharger can be suitably lubricated. This procedure is particularly recommended after a demanding drive.

After a full load operation, or anyway after heavy power demands, keep the engine idling for 3 to 5 minutes before switching it off.

This time allows the lubricating oil and the engine coolant to eliminate the excessive heat from combustion chamber, bearings, inner components and turbocharger.

WARNING

106) *It is dangerous to run the engine in enclosed areas. The engine takes in oxygen and releases carbon dioxide, carbon monoxide and other toxic gases.*
107) *The electro-hydraulic braking system is not active until the engine starts running. So, the brake pedal travel will be longer than normal. This does not indicate a fault.*
108) *Do not start the engine by pushing, towing or driving downhill. These manoeuvres may damage the catalytic converter.*

IMPORTANT

32) *We recommend that during the initial period, or during the first 1600 km (1000 miles), you do not drive to full car performance (e.g. excessive acceleration, long journeys at top speed, sharp braking, etc.).*
33) *When the engine stopped never leave the ignition device in the ON position to prevent useless current draw from draining the battery.*
34) *Warning light ϖ will flash after starting or during prolonged cranking to indicate a fault with the glow plug heating system. If the engine starts, the vehicle can be regularly used, but an Alfa Romeo Dealership must be contacted as soon as possible.*
35) *A quick burst on the accelerator before turning off the engine serves absolutely no practical purpose; it wastes fuel and is damaging for the engine.*

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The vehicle is equipped with electric parking brake to guarantee better use and optimal performance compared to a manually operated parking brake.

The electric parking brake features a switch, located on the central tunnel fig. 142, a motor with caliper for each rear wheel and an electronic control module.

142 07046S0001EM

The electric parking brake can be engaged in two ways:
❒ *manually*, by pulling the switch on the central tunnel;
❒ *automatically* in "Safe Hold" or "Auto Park Brake" conditions.

IMPORTANT Normally, the electric parking brake is engaged automatically when the engine is stopped. This function can be deactivated/activated on the Connect system by selecting the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

following items in sequence on the main menu: "Settings", "Driver assistance" and "Automatic parking brake".

IMPORTANT Always engage the electric parking brake before leaving the vehicle.

IMPORTANT In addition to parking the vehicle with the parking brake always engaged, the wheel steered, chocks or stones positioned in front of the wheels (when on a steep slope), you must always engage:

Manual transmission:

❒ Engage 1 st gear if the car is parked uphill or reverse gear if the car is parked downhill.

Automatic transmission:

❒ engage P (Park) mode.

IMPORTANT Should the vehicle battery be faulty, to unlock the electric parking brake the battery must be replaced.

Engaging the parking brake manually

109) 110) 111)

Briefly pull the switch located on the central tunnel to manually engage the electric parking brake when the vehicle is stationary.

Noise may be heard from the rear of the vehicle when engaging the electric parking brake.

A slight movement of the brake pedal may be detected when engaging the electric parking brake with the brake pedal pressed.

With the electric parking brake engaged, the warning light (!) on the instrument panel and the LED on the switch fig. 142 turn on.

IMPORTANT With the Electronic Parking Brake failure warning light on, some functions of the electric parking brake are deactivated. In this case the driver is responsible for brake activation and vehicle parking in complete safety conditions.

If, under exceptional circumstances, the use of the brake is required with the vehicle in motion, keep the switch on the central tunnel pulled as long as the brake action is necessary.

The (!) warning light may switch on with the hydraulic system temporarily unavailable; in this case braking is controlled by the motors.

The brake lights (stop) will also automatically switch on in the same way as for normal braking with the use of the brake pedal.

Release the switch on the central tunnel to stop the braking action with the vehicle in motion.

If, through this procedure, the vehicle is braked until a speed below 2 mph (3 km/h) is reached and the switch is kept pulled, the parking brake will definitively engage.

IMPORTANT Driving the vehicle with the electric parking brake engaged, or using it several times to slow down the vehicle, may cause severe damage to the braking system.

Disengaging the electric parking brake manually

In order to manually release the parking brake, the ignition device should be at ON position. Moreover, you need to press the brake pedal, then press the switch on the central tunnel briefly.

Noise may be heard from the rear of the vehicle and a slight movement of the brake pedal may be detected during disengagement.

After disengaging the electric parking brake, the (!) warning light on the instrument panel and the LED on the fig. 142 switch turn off.

If the (!) warning light on the instrument panel remains on with the electric parking brake disengaged, this indicates a fault: in this case contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

IMPORTANT Never use gear position P (Park) instead of the electric parking brake. Always engage the electric parking brake when parking the vehicle to prevent injury or damage caused by the unexpected movement of the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE OPERATING MODES

The electric parking brake may operate as follows:

❒ *"Dynamic operating mode"*: this mode is activated by pulling the switch repeatedly whilst driving;

❒ *"Static engagement and release mode"*: with the vehicle stationary, the electric parking brake can be activated by pulling the switch on the central tunnel once. On the other hand, press the switch and the brake pedal at the same time to disengage the brake;

❒ *"Drive Away Release"*: (where provided) the electric parking brake will automatically disengage with the driver side seat belt fastened and the detection of an action performed by the driver to move the vehicle (forward gear or reverse gear);

❒ *"Safe Hold"*: if the vehicle speed is lower than 2 mph (3 km/h), on vehicles with automatic transmission, the gear lever is not in P (Park) position and the driver's intention of leaving the vehicle is detected, the electric parking brake will automatically engage to hold the vehicle in safety conditions;

❒ *"Auto Park Brake"*: if the vehicle speed is below 2 mph (3 km/h), the electric parking break will automatically engage when the gear lever is in P (Park) position. The LED on the switch located on the central tunnel fig. 142 switches on together with the warning light (!) on the instrument panel when the parking brake is engaged and applied to the wheels. Each automatic parking brake engagement can be cancelled by pressing the switch on the central tunnel and at the same time moving the gear lever for the transmission to position P (Park).

SAFE HOLD

It is a safety function that automatically engages the electric parking brake in the event of a dangerous condition for the vehicle.

If:

❒ the vehicle speed is below 2 mph (3 km/h);

❒ on vehicles with automatic transmission, a transmission operating mode different from P (Park) is activated;

❒ the driver's seat belt is not fastened;

❒ the driver side door is open;

❒ no attempts to apply pressure on the brake pedal have been detected.

the electric parking brake engages automatically to prevent vehicle movement.

The Safe Hold function can be temporarily disabled by pressing the switch located on the central tunnel and the brake pedal at the same time, with the vehicle stationary and the driver side door open.

Once disabled, the function will activate again when the vehicle speed reaches 12 mph (20 km/h) or the ignition device is moved to STOP and then to ON.

WARNING

109) *In the case of parking manoeuvres on roads on a gradient, the front wheels must be steered towards the pavement (when parking downhill), or in the opposite direction if the vehicle is parked uphill. Block the wheels with a wedge or a stone if the car is parked on a steep slope.*

110) *Never leave children alone in an unattended vehicle; make sure that when you move away from the vehicle, you have the key with you.*

111) *The electric parking brake must always be engaged when leaving the vehicle.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MANUAL GEARBOX

112)

36)

To engage the gears, press the clutch pedal fully and put the gear lever into the required position (the diagram for gear engagement is shown on the knob).

143 070565000 1EM

To engage reverse gear R from the idle position, press towards the left (until end of stroke) to avoid mistakenly inserting the 1 st gear.

To engage 6 th gear, operate the lever by pressing it towards the right in order to avoid engaging 4 th gear by mistake. The same applies to the shift from 6 th to 5 th gear.

IMPORTANT Reverse can only be engaged when the vehicle is completely stationary. With the engine running, wait for at least 2 seconds with the clutch pedal fully pressed before engaging reverse to prevent damage to the gears and grating.

IMPORTANT The clutch pedal should be used only for gear changes. Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal, however lightly. In some circumstances, the electronic clutch control could cut in by interpreting the incorrect driving style as a fault.

WARNING

112) *Depress the clutch pedal fully to change gear correctly. It is therefore essential that there is nothing under the pedals: make sure the mats are lying flat and do not get in the way of the pedals.*

IMPORTANT

36) *Do not drive with your hand resting on the gear lever as the force exerted, even if slight, could lead over time to premature wear of the gearbox internal components.*

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The vehicle can be equipped with an electronically managed 8-speed automatic transmission where gearshifting takes place automatically depending on the vehicle usage instantaneous parameters (vehicle speed, road gradient and accelerator pedal position).

The new transmission is an absolute innovation as it can match the Start & Stop Evo system with the traditional automatic transmissions with built-in torque converter.

It is still possible to change gear manually thanks to the "sequential mode" position for the gear lever.

DISPLAY

The following information is shown on the dedicated area of the display fig. 144:

❒ **in automatic mode**: the active mode (P, R, N, D). In D (Drive) mode, when changing gear using the steering wheel lever (where present), it also shows the gear engaged with a number;

❒ **in Manual drive mode (sequential)**: the mode (M), the current gear and the double or single gear shift request, both up and down (single or double arrow).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

144 07076S0001EM

GEAR LEVER

The gear functioning is controlled by the gear lever control 1 fig. 145, which can assume the following positions:

- **P** = Park
- **R** = Reverse
- **N** = Neutral
- **D** = Drive, (automatic forward speed)
- **AutoStick**: + shifting to higher gear in sequential driving mode; – shifting to lower gear in sequential driving mode.

The positions diagram is illustrated on the top of the lever.

145 07076S0002EM

The letter corresponding to the selected mode lights up and can be seen on the instrument panel display.

To select one of the operating modes, move the lever forwards or backwards and press the brake pedal at the same time.

To engage R (Reverse) mode, press the pedal and the button 3 fig. 146 in combination.

To pass from P (Park) mode directly to D (Drive) mode, in addition to pressing the brake pedal, it is also necessary to press button 3.

To pass from R (Reverse) mode directly to D (Drive) mode and vice versa, in addition to pressing the brake pedal, it is necessary to press button 3.

146 07076S0005EM

The lever functions like a joystick, so releasing it after giving the command, it automatically returns to the centre position.

The P (Parking) mode can be enabled pushing the P (Parking) 2 button fig. 145.

If using the gear shift in "sequential" mode. you can activate it by moving the lever from D (Drive) to the left and then forward towards the - symbol or back towards the + symbol and the gear is shifted.

To exit position P (Park), or to pass from position N (Neutral) to position D (Drive) or R (Reverse) when the vehicle is stopped or is moving at a low speed, the brake pedal must also be pressed.

IMPORTANT DO NOT accelerate while shifting from position P (or N) to another position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IMPORTANT After selecting a gear, wait a few seconds before accelerating. This precaution is particularly important with a cold engine.

TRANSMISSION OPERATING MODES

Park (P)

113) 114)

37)

The transmission is locked in this mode. The engine can be started in this mode.

IMPORTANT Never try to engage the P mode (Park) when the vehicle is moving. Before leaving the vehicle, make sure this mode is engaged (letter P shown on the display) and that the parking brake is engaged.

When parking on a flat surface, first engage the P mode and then engage the parking brake.

Parking uphill, before activating the P mode, engage the parking brake, otherwise it could be difficult to engage the P mode.

To check that the P mode (Park) is actually engaged, make sure P is illuminated on the display.

It is not possible to select N (Neutral) mode from P (Park) mode.

Automatic activation of P (Park) mode

P (Park) mode is automatically activated if the following conditions are met simultaneously:

- ❒ D (Drive) or R (Reverse) mode is active;
- ❒ the car's speed is close to 0;
- ❒ the brake pedal is released;
- ❒ the driver's seat belt is not fastened;
- ❒ the driver's door is open.

Reverse (R)

Select this mode only with the vehicle at a standstill.

38)

Neutral (N)

115)

It corresponds to neutral for a manual gearbox. The engine can be started with the N mode (neutral) selected. Engage the N mode in the case of prolonged stops with engine running.

Also engage the electric parking brake.

Drive (D) - Automatic forward gear

Use this mode in normal driving conditions.

Passage from D to P (Park) or R (Reverse) modes must take place only after releasing the accelerator pedal, with vehicle at a standstill and brake pedal pressed.

This mode ensures automatic engagement of the most suitable gears for driving needs and maximum fuel economy in terms of consumption.

In this position, the transmission shifts the gears automatically, selecting the most suitable for forward driving among those available as you go. In this way the vehicle's optimal driving characteristics are guaranteed in all the classic usage conditions.

AutoStick - Manual (sequential) shifting mode

In the case of frequent gearshifting (e.g. for sport driving, when the vehicle is driven with a heavy load, on slopes, with strong headwind or when towing heavy trailers), it is recommended to use the Autostick (sequential shifting) mode to select and keep a lower fixed ratio.

In these conditions, the use of a lower gear improves vehicle performance, preventing overheating.

It is possible to shift from D mode (Drive) to sequential mode regardless of vehicle speed.

Activation

Starting from D (Drive) mode, to activate the sequential drive mode, move the lever to the left (– and + indication of the trim). The gear engaged will be shown on the display.

Gearshifting is made by moving the gear lever forwards, towards symbol – or backwards, towards symbol +.

Steering wheel stalks

(where provided)

The gear can be manually shifted also by using the levers behind the steering wheel, pull the right gear lever (+) towards the steering wheel and release it to engage a higher gear; perform the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

same operation with the left lever (-) to engage a lower gear fig. 147.

To engage N (Neutral): pull simultaneously both levers.

To activate D (Drive) mode, from N (Neutral), P (Parking) and R (Reverse): push the brake pedal and the right lever (+).

147 07076S0006EM

IMPORTANT If only one manual shift is necessary, the letter D will remain on the display with the engaged gear next to it.

Deactivation

To deactivate the sequential driving mode, bring the gear lever back in position D (Drive) ("automatic" driving mode).

Important notes

❒ Do not downshift on slippery surfaces: the drive wheels might lose grip with following risk for the vehicle to slip. This could cause accidents or personal injuries.

❒ To select the correct gear for maximum deceleration (engine brake), just keep the gear lever pressed forwards (–): the transmission goes to an operating mode in which the vehicle can slow down easily.

❒ The vehicle will keep the gear selected by the driver until the safety conditions allow it.

❒ This means, for example, that the system will try to prevent the engine from switching off, automatically downshifting if the engine speed is too low.

TRANSMISSION EMERGENCY FUNCTION

(where provided)

Transmission operation is constantly monitored to detect any fault. If a condition that might damage the transmission is detected, the "transmission emergency" function is activated.

In this condition, the transmission stays in 4 th gear, regardless of the selected gear. Positions P (Parking), R (Reverse) and N (Neutral) still work.

The ⚙ symbol might light up in the display.

In the event of a "transmission emergency" immediately contact the nearest Alfa Romeo Dealership.

Temporary failure

If the warning light goes on, you can confirm if the failure is temporary and restore the gear's proper functioning by proceeding as follows:

❒ stop the vehicle;

❒ engage P (Park);

❒ bring the ignition device to STOP;

❒ wait for about 10 seconds, then restart the engine;

❒ select the desired gear: if the problem is not detected anymore the transmission correct operation is restored.

IMPORTANT In the event of a temporary failure it is in any case recommended to contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.

GEAR ENGAGEMENT DISABLING SYSTEM WITHOUT BRAKE PEDAL PRESSED

This system prevents you from moving the gear lever from position P (Park) if the brake pedal has not been previously depressed.

To bring the gear lever to a position other than P (Park), the ignition device must be in position AVV (engine on or off) and the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

brake pedal must be pressed.

PARK ENGAGEMENT DISABLING WHEN ENGINE IS STOPPED

Only if strictly necessary (e.g. pushing the vehicle, conveyor vehicle washing systems) inhibit the automatic activation of P mode (Park) when stopping the engine, or proceed as described below:

❒ car at a standstill;

❒ N (neutral) mode activated;

❒ press the ignition button for at least 3 seconds.

The automatic parking brake engagement function when the engine is stopped can also be deactivated on the Connect system by selecting the following functions on the main menu: "Settings", "Driver assistance" and "Automatic parking brake".

IMPORTANT NOTES

Failure to comply with what is reported below may damage the transmission:

❒ select P mode (Park) only with the vehicle at a standstill;

❒ select R mode (Reverse), or pass from R to another mode only with the vehicle at a standstill and engine idling;

❒ do not change between P (Park), R (Reverse), N (Neutral) or D (Drive) modes with engine running at a speed above idling;

❒ before activating any transmission operating mode, fully depress the brake pedal.

IMPORTANT The unexpected movement of the vehicle can injure the occupants or people nearby. Do not leave the vehicle with engine running: before getting out of the passenger compartment always engage the electric parking brake, select the P mode (Park), stop the engine.

With the ignition device in the STOP position, the transmission is blocked in the P position (Park), to prevent accidental vehicle movement; on versions equipped with Keyless Start, do not leave the electronic key near the vehicle (or in a place accessible to children) and do not leave the ignition device activated.

A child could activate the electric window winders, other controls or even start the engine; it is dangerous to select a mode other than P (Park) or N (Neutral) at an engine speed higher than idling.

If the brake pedal is not fully depressed the vehicle could rapidly accelerate.

Only engage the gear with engine at idling, fully depressing the brake pedal; if the transmission temperature exceeds the normal operating limits, the transmission control unit may change the gear engagement order and reduce the drive torque; if the transmission overheats the display shows the symbol. In this case the transmission could operate incorrectly until it cools down; when using the vehicle with extremely low external temperatures, the transmission operation may change depending on the engine and transmission temperature, as well as vehicle speed; activation of the torque converter clutch and of the 7 th or 8 th gear is inhibited until the transmission oil is correctly warmed up. Complete operation of the transmission will be enabled as soon as the fluid temperature reaches the predefined value.

WARNING

113) *Never use position P (Park) instead of the electric parking brake. Always engage the electric parking brake when parking the vehicle to avoid the accidental movement of the vehicle.*

114) *If the P (Park) position is not engaged, the vehicle could move and injure people. Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the gear lever is in position P and that the electric parking brake is engaged.*

115) *Do not shift the gear lever to N (Neutral) and do not stop the engine when driving on a downhill road. This type of driving is dangerous and reduces the possibility of intervening in the case of variation of the road traffic or surface. You risk losing control of your vehicle and causing accidents.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IMPORTANT

37) *Before selecting P (Park) mode, bring the ignition device to position ON and press the brake pedal. Otherwise, the gear lever may get damaged.*
38) *Engage reverse only with the car stationary, engine at idling speed and accelerator fully released.*

"Alfa DNA™ Pro" SYSTEM

"Alfa DNA™ Pro" SYSTEM (Car dynamic control system)

This device allows, using the selector (on the central tunnel) fig. 148, different car response modes to be selected according to driving style and road conditions:

148 07076S0004EM

❒ d = Dynamic (sports driving mode)
❒ n = Normal (mode for driving in normal conditions)
❒ a = Advanced Efficiency (ECO driving mode for maximum fuel savings).
❒ RACE = track race driving mode (where provided).
❒ = adjusts the calibration of the suspensions (where provided).

Unlike the other ones, the RACE position is unstable, therefore, by rotating the selector to RACE, it will return to its initial position "d".

The RACE symbol lights up in red on the selector, when the mode is active.

On the instrument panel display, the different modes are characterised by different colours:
❒ Normal - Blue, fig. 149
❒ Dynamic - Red
❒ RACE - Yellow
❒ Advanced Efficiency - Green

149 07076S0003EM

The different driving modes are graphically different from the colour of the frames and the contents only on the "performance" screens.

DRIVING MODES

"Normal" Mode

Activation

It is activated by rotating the selector to the letter "n", the displays light up in blue, fig. 150.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

150 07116S0002EM

Reduced engine performance.

ECO shifting strategy for the automatic transmission.

The "Performance" screen graphically reproduces some parameters closely linked to the efficiency of the driving style, with a view to limiting consumption, fig. 151.

151 07116S0001EM

Deactivation

To deactivate the Normal mode, move the selector to another mode ("d" or "a").

"Dynamic" Mode

Activation

It is activated by rotating the selector to the letter "d", the displays light up in red, fig. 152.

152 07116S0003EM

ESC and ASR systems: intervention thresholds that ensure more enjoyable, sportier driving whilst guaranteeing the stability of the car.

"Electronic Q2" system: the system is calibrated to increase traction whilst accelerating on bends, improving the agility of the car.

Engine and gearbox/transmission: adoption of sports mapping.

WARNING In "Dynamic", the sensitivity of the accelerator pedal increases considerably. Consequently, driving is less fluid and comfortable.

The "Performance" screen displays parameters related to vehicle stability, the graphs illustrate the trend of the longitudinal/lateral accelerations (G-meter information), considering gravity acceleration as a reference unit.

Lateral acceleration peaks are displayed on the right, fig. 153.

153 07116S0006EM

Deactivation

To deactivate the Dynamic mode, move the selector to "n", Normal mode.

"RACE" MODE

(where provided)

Activation

It is activated by rotating the selector to position "Race", the displays light up in yellow, fig. 154.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

154 07116S0004EM

Engine and gearbox/transmission: adoption of sports mapping.

WARNING It is recommended to activate this mode at the track.

WARNING In "Race", the sensitivity of the accelerator pedal increases considerably. Consequently, driving is less fluid and comfortable.

The "Performance" screen displays parameters related to vehicle stability, the graphs illustrate the trend of the longitudinal/lateral accelerations (G-meter information), considering gravity acceleration as a reference unit.

The screen displays the lateral and longitudinal acceleration peaks, fig. 155.

155 05036S0014EM

IMPORTANT If the brake system overheats, this is communicated by the Connect system. In this case, allow the system to cool for a few minutes by driving the vehicle normally without operating the brakes.

Deactivation

To deactivate the Race mode, take the selector to position "Race" again and the system will be set to "d" mode.

"Advanced Efficiency" Mode

Activation

It is activated by rotating the selector to the letter "a", the displays light up in green, fig. 156.

156 07116S0005EM

ESC and ASR systems: intervention thresholds aimed at ensuring maximum safety in low-grip driving conditions. It is advisable to select "Advanced Efficiency" mode in the presence of low-grip road surfaces.

"ELECTRONIC Q2" SYSTEM: the system is deactivated.

Engine and gearbox/transmission: standard response.

The "Performance" screen graphically displays some parameters closely related to the vehicle consumption, fig. 157.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

157 07116S0008EM

Deactivation

To deactivate the Advanced Efficiency mode, move the selector to "n", Normal mode.

IMPORTANT NOTES

❒ When the engine is next started, the "Advanced Efficiency", "Dynamic" and "Normal" mode selected previously is retained. The system will reactivate in "Advanced Efficiency", "Dynamic" or "Normal" mode, depending on which mode was selected before the engine was stopped.

❒ When the engine is next started, the "Race" mode selected previously is not retained. The system will reactivate in "Dynamic" mode.

❒ It is not possible to go directly from "Dynamic" mode to "Advanced Efficiency" mode and vice versa. You must always activate the "Normal" mode first and then select the other mode.

ALFA ACTIVE SUSPENSION (AAS)

(where provided)

The vehicle's electronic suspensions management system is the result of a sophisticated elaboration of the various board sensors, aimed at optimizing the vehicle's performance.

The system continuously monitors the damping of the suspensions through the actuator installed on each shock absorber. This way, the calibration of the shock absorbers can be adjusted to the conditions of the road surface and to the dynamic conditions of the vehicle, improving its comfort and road holding.

The driver can choose, even while driving, (only in "d" or "Race" mode), between two types of suspension calibration: a more sporty or a more comfortable one.

By pressing the button, the system prepares to work with a shock absorber calibration which favours driving comfort.

158 04306S0001EM

In the case of a system failure, the following symbol appears on the instrument panel display .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

START & STOP EVO

The Stop/Start Evo automatically stops the engine each time the vehicle is stationary and starts it again when the driver wants to move off.

In this way, the vehicle efficiency is increased, by reducing consumption, dangerous gas emissions and sound pollution.

IMPORTANT When the Start & Stop Evo stops the engine, the power steering is also disabled.

OPERATING MODE

Stopping the engine

Versions with mechanical gearbox

With the vehicle stopped, the engine stops with gearbox in neutral and clutch pedal released.

Versions with automatic transmission

With vehicle at a standstill and brake pedal pressed, the engine switches off if the gear lever is in a position other than R.

The system does not operate when the gear lever is in R, for making parking manoeuvres easier.

In the event of stops uphill, engine switching off is disabled to make the "Hill Start Assist" function available (works only with running engine).

NOTE The engine can only be automatically stopped after having run at about 6 mph (10 km/h). After an automatic restart, to stop the engine you only need to move the vehicle (exceed a speed of 0.3 mph (0.5 km/h)).

Engine stopping is signalled by the Ⓐ symbol lighting up on the instrument panel display.

Restarting the engine

Versions with mechanical gearbox

To restart the engine, press the clutch pedal.

If the vehicle does not start when the clutch is pressed, place the gear lever in neutral and repeat the procedure. If the problem persists, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

Versions with automatic transmission

To restart the engine, release the brake pedal.

With brake pressed, if the gear lever is in automatic mode - D (Drive) - the engine can be restarted by moving the lever to R (Reverse) or N (Neutral) or "AutoStick".

With brake pressed, if the gear lever is in "AutoStick" mode, the engine can be restarted by moving the lever to "+" or "–", or R (Reverse) or N (Neutral).

When the engine has been stopped automatically, keeping the brake pedal pressed, the brake can be released keeping the engine off by quickly shifting the gear lever to P (Park).

To restart the engine, just move the lever out of a position other than P.

SYSTEM MANUAL ACTIVATION/ DEACTIVATION

To manually activate/deactivate the system, press the button inserted in the control panel on the left of the steering wheel, fig. 159.

159 07126S0001EM

System activation

The activation of the system is indicated by the Ⓐ symbol lighting up on the display. In this condition, the LED on the fig. 159 button is off.

System deactivation

A message will appear on the display when the system is deactivated. In this condition, the LED on the fig. 159 button is on.

IMPORTANT Each time the engine is started, the system activates regardless of when it was previously switched off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MISSED ENGINE STOPPING CONDITIONS

39)

When the system is active, for a higher comfort and safety, and to reduce emissions, the engine does not stop in some conditions, such as:
❒ engine still cold;
❒ especially cold outside temperature;
❒ battery not sufficiently charged;
❒ particulate filter (DPF) regeneration in progress (Diesel engines only);
❒ driver's door not shut;
❒ driver's seat belt not fastened;
❒ reverse gear engaged (e.g. for parking manoeuvres);
❒ with the automatic climate control active, if an adequate level of thermal comfort has not been reached or with MAX-DEF function active;
❒ during the first period of use, to initialize the system;
❒ a half turn of the steering wheel or to the right or left with respect to the wheels in a straight position.

ENGINE RESTARTING CONDITIONS

Due to comfort, emission control and safety reasons, the engine can restart automatically without any action by the driver, under special conditions, such as:
❒ battery not sufficiently charged;
❒ reduced braking system vacuum (e.g. if the brake pedal is pressed repeatedly);
❒ vehicle moving (e.g. when driving on roads with a gradient);
❒ engine stopping by the Start & Stop Evo system for more than 3 approx. minutes;
❒ with the automatic climate control system activated, for adjusting the thermal comfort level or after MAX-DEF function activation;

With gear engaged, automatic engine restarting is possible only by fully pressing the clutch pedal.

Remarks

In cases of undesired engine stops, due for example to the clutch pedal being released abruptly with a gear engaged, if the system is activated, the engine can be restarted by fully depressing the clutch pedal or by bringing the gearshifting lever in neutral.

If the clutch is not pressed, after 3 minutes from the engine stopping, the engine can be restarted only using the ignition device.

SAFETY FUNCTIONS

When the engine is stopped through the Start & Stop Evo system, if the driver releases their seat belt, opens the driver's or passenger's door or releases the engine bonnet from inside the vehicle, the engine can be restarted only by using the ignition device.

This condition is indicated to the driver both through a buzzer and a message on the display.

"ENERGY SAVING" FUNCTION

If, following the automatic engine restarting, the driver does not carry out any action for more than 3 minutes, the Start & Stop Evo system stops the engine definitely, to prevent fuel consumption.

In these cases, the engine can only be restarted using the ignition device.

NOTE In any case, it is possible to keep the engine running by deactivating the system.

IRREGULAR OPERATION

In the event of malfunction, the Start & Stop Evo system is deactivated.

For failure indications, see the "Warning lights and messages" paragraph, "Knowing the instrument panel" chapter.

VEHICLE INACTIVITY

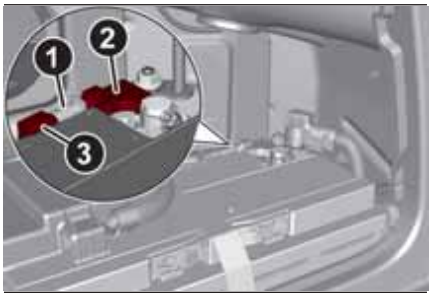
116)

In the event of vehicle inactivity (or if the battery is replaced), special attention must be paid to the disconnection of the battery power supply.

Proceed as follows:

Remove connector 3 fig. 160 from socket 1 to disconnect sensor 2 (battery status monitoring) installed on the negative pole of the battery. This sensor should never be disconnected from the pole except if the battery is replaced.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

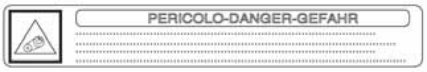


160 07126S0002EM

IMPORTANT After setting the ignition device to STOP and having closed the driver side door, wait at least 1 minute before disconnecting the electrical supply from the battery. When reconnecting the electrical supply to the battery, make sure that the ignition device is in the STOP position and the driver side door is closed.

Danger: risk of engine starting with bonnet open

The label fig. 161 is applied onto the front end of the bonnet.



161 07126S0003EM

WARNING

116) *When replacing the battery, always contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership. Replace the battery with one of the same type (HEAVY DUTY) and with the same specifications.*

IMPORTANT

39) *If the climate comfort is to be favoured, the Start&Stop system can be deactivated, for a continuous operation of the climate control system.*

SPEED LIMITER

DESCRIPTION

This device allows the speed of the vehicle to be limited to values which can be set by the driver.

The maximum speed can be set both with vehicle stationary and in motion. The minimum speed that can be set is 20 mph (30 km/h).

When the device is active, the vehicle speed depends on the pressure at the accelerator pedal, until the programmed speed limit is reached (see "Speed limit programming" paragraph).

ACTIVATING THE DEVICE

The function can be activated/ deactivated on the Connect system.

Activating the device

To access the function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Safety", "Speed Limiter" and "on".

The activation of the device is signalled by the displaying of the green symbol along with the last speed set, fig. 162. The Speed Limiter function can remain active concurrently with the Cruise Control system. If a speed limit below the one indicated in the Cruise Control is selected, the Cruise Control speed will be lowered to that of the Speed Limiter. This function remains available in RACE mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

162 07136S0001EM

SPEED LIMIT PROGRAMMING

The speed limit can be programmed on the Connect system.

To access the function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Safety" and "Speed Limiter Set Speed".

By turning the Rotary Pad, the speed increases by 5 mph (5 km/h), from a minimum of 20 mph (30 km/h) to a maximum of 110 mph (180 km/h).

EXCEEDING THE PROGRAMMED SPEED

By fully depressing the accelerator pedal, the programmed speed can be exceeded even with the device active (e.g. in the event of overtaking).

The device is disabled until the speed drops below the set limit, after which it reactivates automatically.

PROGRAMMED SPEED ICON FLASHING

The programmed speed flashes in the following cases:

❒ when the accelerator pedal has been fully depressed and the vehicle has exceeded the programmed speed;

❒ activating the system after setting a limit below the effective speed of the vehicle;

❒ in the event of sharp acceleration.

DEACTIVATING THE DEVICE

The function can be activated/ deactivated on the Connect system.

Deactivating the device

To access the function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Safety", "Speed Limiter" and "off".

Automatic deactivation of the device

The device deactivates automatically in the event of fault in the system. In this case, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

Temporary signal loss

When the devices loses the signal, the white symbol without the speed indication lights up on the display.

System failure

When the system is in failure, the amber symbol ! lights up on the display.

CRUISE CONTROL

This is an electronically controlled driving assistance device that allows the desired vehicle speed to be maintained, without having to press the accelerator pedal. This device can be used at a speed above 40 km/h on long stretches of dry, straight roads with few variations (e.g. motorways).

It is therefore not recommended to use this device on extra-urban roads with traffic. Do not use it in town.

The Cruise Control buttons are located on the left side of the steering wheel.

To ensure correct operation, the Cruise Control is designed to deactivate if more than one function is operated simultaneously. In this case the system can be reactivated pressing button and setting the desired speed.

Travelling downhill, the system could brake the vehicle to keep the set speed unvaried.

ACTIVATING THE DEVICE

117) 118) 119)

To activate the device press button fig. 163.

The activation of the device is signalled by the switching on of the white warning light on the display.

The Cruise Control function can remain active concurrently with the Speed Limiter system. If a speed limit below the one indicated in the Cruise Control is

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

selected, the Cruise Control speed will be lowered to that of the Speed Limiter.

163 07146S0001EM

The device cannot be engaged in 1 st or reverse gear: it is advisable to engage it in 3 rd gear or higher.

IMPORTANT It is dangerous to leave the device on when it is not used. There is a risk of inadvertently activating it and losing control of the vehicle due to unexpected excessive speed.

SETTING THE DESIRED SPEED

Proceed as follows:
❒ operate the device (see the previous instructions);
❒ when the vehicle has reached the desired speed, raise/lower the SET fig. 164 switch and release to activate the device. When the accelerator is released, the vehicle will keep the selected speed automatically.

If needed (when overtaking for instance), you can accelerate simply by pressing the accelerator; when you release the pedal, the vehicle goes back to the speed stored previously.

When travelling downhill with the device active, the vehicle speed may slightly exceed the stored one.

IMPORTANT Before raising/lowering the SET switch the vehicle must be travelling at a constant speed on a flat surface.

164 07146S0002EM

INCREASING/DECREASING SPEED

Increasing speed

Once the Cruise Control has been activated, the speed can be increased by lifting the SET switch.

Keeping the button pressed, the set speed will increase until the button is released, then the new speed will be stored.

At every movement of the SET switch the set speed is fine-adjusted.

Decreasing speed

When the device is active, to reduce the speed, lower the SET switch.

Keeping the button pressed, the set speed will decrease until the button is released, then the new speed will be stored.

At every movement of the SET switch the set speed is fine-adjusted instead.

IMPORTANT Moving the SET switch allows to adjust the speed according to the selected unit of measurement ("metric" or "imperial") set on the Connect system (see dedicated supplement).

Accelerating when overtaking

Depress the accelerator pedal: when this is released the vehicle will gradually go back to the stored speed.

Use of the device on hilly routes

In versions equipped with automatic transmission, the device can autonomously downshift to keep the set speed when driving on hilly routes.

On steep gradients, the loss or gain in speed may be considerable and it is therefore preferable to deactivate the device.

IMPORTANT The device keeps the speed stored even uphill and downhill. A slight variation in the speed on slight rises is completely normal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RECALLING THE SPEED

For versions with automatic transmission operating in D mode (Drive - automatic), press and release the RES fig. 165 button to recall the previously set speed.

For versions with manual gearbox or automatic transmission in Autostick (sequential) mode, before recalling the previously set speed you should accelerate until getting close to it, then press and release the RES button.

165 07146S0003EM

DEACTIVATING THE DEVICE

Lightly pressing the brake pedal deactivates the Cruise Control without deleting the stored speed.

The Cruise Control may be deactivated also by applying the electric parking brake or when the braking system is operated (e.g. operation of the ESC system).

The stored speed is deleted in the following cases:

❒ pressing the on/off button or switching off the engine;

❒ if there is a malfunction in the Cruise Control.

DEACTIVATING THE DEVICE

The Cruise Control is deactivated by pressing the activation/deactivation button or bringing the ignition device to the STOP position.

WARNING

117) *When travelling with the device active, never move the gear lever to neutral.*
118) *In case of a malfunction or failure of the device, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*
119) *The Cruise Control can be dangerous if the system cannot keep a constant speed. In specific conditions speed may be excessive, resulting in the risk of losing control of the vehicle and causing accidents. Do not use the device in heavy traffic or on winding, icy, snowy or slippery roads.*

ACTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

(where provided)

120) 121) 122) 123) 124) 125)

40) 41) 42) 43) 44) 45) 46)

The Active Cruise Control (ACC) is a driver assist device which combines the Cruise Control functions with one for controlling the distance from the vehicle ahead.

The device allows to hold the vehicle at the desired speed without needing to press the accelerator. It also allows to hold a given distance from the vehicle ahead (the distance can be set by the driver).

The Active Cruise Control (ACC) uses a radar sensor, located behind the front bumper fig. 166 and a camera, located in the middle area of the windscreen fig. 167, to detect the presence of a vehicle close ahead.

166 06016S0003EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

167 06016S0004EM

The device further enhances driving comfort provided by the electronic Cruise Control when on the motorway or out of town with light traffic.

Important notes

If the sensor does not detect any vehicle ahead, the device will maintain a fixed set speed.

If the sensor detects a vehicle ahead, the device automatically intervenes by braking (or accelerating) slightly in order not to exceed the original set speed, so that the vehicle keeps the preset distance, seeking to adapt to the speed of the vehicle ahead.

In the cases described below, the system performance is not guaranteed, it is therefore advisable to turn the device on by pressing the fig. 168 button:

- driving in fog, heavy rain, snow, heavy traffic and in complex driving situations (e.g. on motorways with roadworks in progress);
- driving near a bend (winding roads), icy, snowy, slippery roads or with steep climbs and descents;
- entering a turn lane or on a slip road;
- towing a trailer;
- when circumstances do not allow safe driving at a constant speed.

ACTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ACTIVATION/DEACTIVATION

The device can have four operating states:

- Enabled (speed not set);
- Activated (speed set);
- Paused;
- Deactivated.

Enabling / Activating

To enable the device, press and release the fig. 168 button.

168 07146S0010EM

When the device is enabled and ready to operate, the display shows the white icon with dashes in place of the speed fig. 169.

169 07146S0016EM

Setting a speed activates the system. The display shows the icon in green with the set speed.

The device cannot be enabled when RACE mode is active.

IMPORTANT It is dangerous to leave the device activated when it is not used. There is a risk of inadvertently activating it and losing control of the vehicle due to unexpected excessive speed.

Pausing / Deactivating

With the device enabled (speed not set), press the button.

With the device active (speed set), press the button to Pause. The display will show the icon in white with the speed in brackets. To definitively deactivate the device, press the button again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SETTING THE DESIRED SPEED

The speed can be set from a minimum of 30 km/h (or 20 mph for markets with instrument panels in mph) to a maximum of 180 km/h (or 110 mph for markets with instrument panels in mph).

When the car reaches the desired speed, raise/lower the SET fig. 170 switch and release it to activate the device. When the accelerator is released, the vehicle will keep the selected speed automatically

170 07146S0017EM

While the accelerator pedal is pressed:
❒ the device will not be able to control the distance between the vehicle and the one ahead. In this case the speed will be determined only by the position of the accelerator pedal.

The device will return to normal operation as soon as the accelerator pedal is released.

The system **cannot** be set:
❒ when pressing the brake pedal;
❒ when the brakes are overheated;
❒ when the electric parking brake has been operated;
❒ when either P (park), R (reverse) or N (neutral) is engaged;
❒ when the engine rpm is above a maximum threshold;
❒ when the vehicle speed is not within the settable speed range;
❒ when the ESC (or ABS or other stability control systems) are operating or have just operated;
❒ when the ESC system is off;
❒ when the Forward Collision Warning Plus system (where provided) is braking automatically;
❒ in the event of device failure;
❒ when the engine is off;
❒ in case of obstruction of the radar sensor (in this case the bumper area where it is located must be cleaned).

In case of system set, the conditions described above also cause a cancellation or deactivation of the system with times that may vary according to the conditions.

IMPORTANT The device will not be deactivated when speeds higher than those set are reached by pressing the accelerator pedal (180 km/h or 110 mph, the latter for instrument panels set to miles per hour). In these conditions, the device may not work correctly and it is advisable to deactivate it.

CHANGING SPEED

Increasing speed

Once the device has been activated, you can increase the speed by lifting the SET switch. Each time it is operated, the speed increases by 1 mph (1 km/h).

By holding the button up, the set speed will increase in steps of 6 mph (10 km/h) until the button is released, then the new speed will be stored.

Decreasing speed

Once the device has been activated, you can decrease the speed by lowering the SET switch. Each time it is operated, the speed decreases by 1 mph (1 km/h).

By holding the button down, the set speed will decrease in steps of 6 mph (10 km/h) until the button is released, then the new speed will be stored.

IMPORTANT Moving the SET switch allows you to adjust the speed according to the selected unit of measurement ("metric" or "imperial") set on the Connect system (see dedicated supplement).

Important notes

By keeping the accelerator pedal depressed, the vehicle can continue to accelerate beyond the set speed. In this case, use the SET switch to set the speed to the vehicle's current speed.

When you press the SET button to reduce

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the speed, the braking system intervenes automatically if the engine brake does not slow the vehicle down sufficiently to reach the set speed. The device holds the set speed uphill and downhill; however a slight variation is entirely normal, particularly on slight gradients.

The automatic transmission could change to a lower gears when driving downhill or when accelerating. This is normal and necessary to maintain the set speed.

The device is switched off while driving if the brakes overheat.

ACCELERATING WHEN OVERTAKING

When driving with the device active and following a vehicle, the device provides additional acceleration to facilitate overtaking, when travelling over a given speed and switches on the left direction indicator (of the right indicator for right-hand drive versions).

In left-hand traffic, the overtaking assist function is only active when the left-hand lane is used for overtaking the vehicle ahead (the opposite activation logic is used in right-hand traffic countries).

The device detects the direction of traffic automatically when the vehicle passes from left-hand traffic to right-hand traffic. In this case, the overtaking assist function is only active when the reference vehicle is overtaken on the right. The additional acceleration is activated when the driver uses the right direction indicator.

In this condition, the device no longer provides the overtaking assist function on the left-hand side until it determines that the vehicle has returned to left-hand traffic conditions.

RECALLING THE SPEED

Once the system has been cancelled but not deactivated, if a speed was previously set simply press the RES button and remove your foot from the accelerator to recall it.

The system will be set to the last stored speed.

171 07146S0018EM

Before returning to the previously set speed, bring the speed close to that value, then press the RES button and release it.

IMPORTANT The recall function must only be used if the road and traffic conditions so allow. Recalling an excessively high or low speed for the current traffic and road conditions could cause an acceleration or a deceleration of the vehicle. Failure to comply with these precautions may cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

SETTING THE DISTANCE BETWEEN VEHICLES

The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead may be set to 1 bar (short), 2 bars (medium), 3 bars (long), 4 bars (maximum) fig. 172.

172 07146S0019EM

The distances from the vehicle ahead are proportional to speed.

The interval of time with respect to the vehicle ahead remains constant and varies from 1 second (for the short distance 1-bar setting) to 2 seconds (for the maximum distance 4-bar setting).

The set distance is shown on the display by a dedicated icon.

The setting is 4 (maximum) the first time

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the device is used. After the distance has been modified by the driver, the new distance will be stored also after the system is deactivated and reactivated.

To decrease the distance

Press and release the fig. 173 button to decrease the distance setting. The distance setting decreases by one bar (shorter) every time the button is pressed.

173 07146S0015EM

The set speed is held if there are no vehicles ahead. Once the shortest distance has been reached, a further press of the button will set the longest distance.

If a slower car is detected in the same lane, the car icon on the display turns from grey to white. The device automatically adjusts the car's speed to keep the set distance, independently of the set speed.

The vehicle holds the set distance until:
❒ the vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed higher than the set speed;
❒ the vehicle ahead leaves the lane or the detection field of the Active Cruise Control device sensor;
❒ the distance setting is changed;
❒ the Active Cruise Control device is deactivated/paused.

IMPORTANT The maximum breaking applied by the device is limited. The driver may apply the brakes in all cases if needed.

IMPORTANT If the device predicts that the braking level is insufficient to hold the set distance, either "BRAKE!" or a dedicated message is displayed to warn the driver of approaching the vehicle ahead. An acoustic signal is also emitted. In this case, it is advisable to brake immediately as necessary to hold a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

IMPORTANT The driver is responsible for ensuring that there are no pedestrians, other vehicles or objectives along the direction of the vehicle. Failure to comply with these precautions may cause serious accidents and injuries.

IMPORTANT The driver is fully responsible for holding a safe distance from the vehicle ahead respecting the highway code in force in the respective country.

"STOP AND GO" STRATEGY

The "Stop and Go" operating strategy allows you to maintain a safe distance from the vehicle ahead until the car has completely stopped. It will also restart the car automatically if the vehicle ahead moves off within two seconds, otherwise it is necessary to press the accelerator pedal or the RES button to restart.

DEACTIVATION

The device is deactivated and the set speed is cancelled if:
❒ if the button on the Active Cruise Control is pressed (with the device enabled or paused);
❒ the ignition device is in the STOP position;
❒ RACE mode is activated.

The device is cancelled (the set speed and distance are stored):
❒ when the device is paused (see the "Activating / Deactivating Active Cruise Control" paragraph);
❒ when the conditions shown in the "Setting the desired speed" paragraph occur;

SYSTEM LIMITED OPERATION SIGNAL

If the dedicated message is shown on the display, a condition limiting the system operation may have occurred.

The possible reasons of this limitation are something blocking the camera view or a fault. If an obstruction is signalled,

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

clean the area of the windscreen indicated in fig. 0and check that the message has disappeared.

When the conditions limiting the system functions end, this will go back to normal and complete operation.

Should the fault persist, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

PRECAUTIONS WHILE DRIVING

The device may not work correctly in some driving conditions (see below): the driver must control the vehicle at all times.

Towing a trailer

Use of the device is not recommended while towing a trailer.

Vehicle not aligned

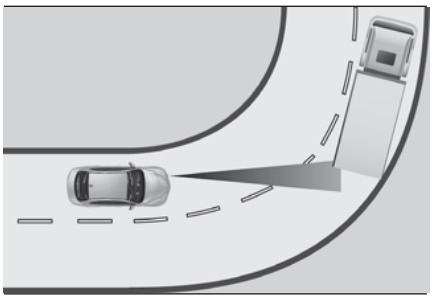
The device may not detect a vehicle travelling on the same lane but which is not aligned along the same direction of travel or a vehicle which is cutting in from a side lane. Sufficient distance from the vehicles ahead may not be guaranteed in these cases.

The non-aligned vehicle can weave in and out of the driving direction causing the vehicle to brake or accelerate unexpectedly.

Steering and curves

On curves fig. 174 with the device set, it could limit speed and acceleration to guarantee vehicle stability even if no vehicles are detected ahead.

When leaving the curve, the device resets the previously set speed.



174 07146S0011EM

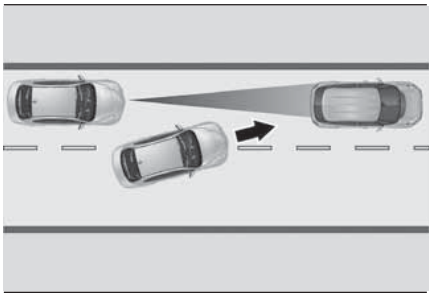
IMPORTANT In case of narrow curves, the performance of the device could be limited. In this case, it is advisable to deactivate the device.

Using the device on slopes

When driving on roads with variable gradient, the device may not detect the presence of a vehicle on the lane. Device performance could be limited according to speed, load, traffic conditions and gradient steepness.

Lane change

The device may not detect the presence of a vehicle until it is fully in your lane.



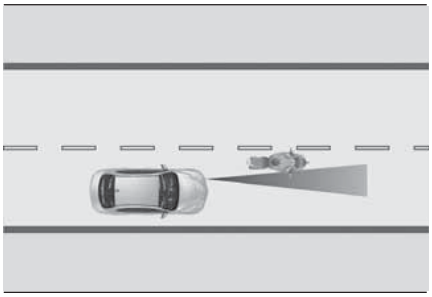
175 07146S0012EM

In this case, sufficient distance from the vehicle which is changing lane may not be guaranteed: it is advisable to pay the utmost attention at all times and be always ready to press the brakes if needed.

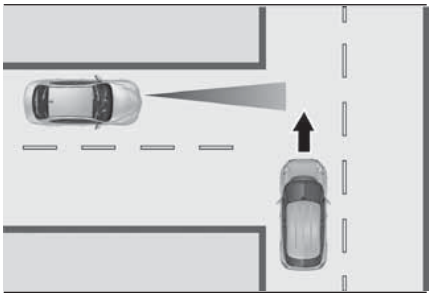
Small vehicles

Some narrow vehicles (e.g. bicycles and motorcycles fig. 176) travelling near the outer edges of the lane or which enter the lane from kerbside are not detected until they are fully in the lane.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



176 07146S0013EM



177 07146S0014EM

Sufficient distance from the vehicles ahead may not be guaranteed in these cases.

Stationary objects and vehicles

The device cannot detect the presence of stationary vehicles or objects. For example, the device will not operate if the vehicle ahead leaves the lane and a vehicle ahead of that one is standing on the lane. Pay the utmost attention at all times and be always ready to press the brakes if needed.

Objects and vehicles moving in opposite or crosswise direction

The device cannot detect the presence of objects or vehicles travelling in opposite or crosswise direction fig. 177 and consequently will not be operated.

WARNING

120) *Pay the utmost attention while driving at all times and be always ready to press the brakes if needed.*
121) *The system is an aid for the driver, who must always pay full attention while driving. The responsibility always rests with the driver, who must take into account the traffic conditions in order to drive in complete safety. The driver must always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front.*
122) *The device is not activated in presence of pedestrians, oncoming vehicles in the opposite direction of travel or moving in the crosswise direction and stationary objects (e.g. a vehicle standing in a queue or a broken down vehicle).*
123) *The device cannot take account of road, traffic and weather conditions, and conditions of poor visibility (e.g. fog).*
124) *The device does not always fully recognise complex driving conditions that could cause it to determine the safe distance to be held incorrectly or not at all.*
125) *The device cannot apply the maximum braking force: the car will not be stopped completely.*

IMPORTANT

40) *The system may have limited or absent operation due to weather conditions such as: heavy rain, hail, thick fog, heavy snow.*
41) *The section of the bumper before the sensor must not be covered with adhesives, auxiliary headlights or any other object.*
42) *Operation can be adversely affected by any structural change made to the vehicle, such as a modification to the front geometry, tyre change, or a heavier load than the standard load of the vehicle.*
43) *Incorrect repairs made on the front part of the vehicle (e.g. bumper, chassis) may alter the position of the radar sensor, and adversely affect its operation. Go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership for any operation of this type.*
44) *Do not tamper with nor carry out any intervention on the radar sensor or on the camera on the windscreen. In the event of a sensor failure, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*
45) *Do not wash with high-pressure jets in the bumper lower area: in particular do not operate on the system's electrical connector.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

46) *Be careful in the case of repairs and new paintings in the area around the sensor (panel covering the sensor on the left side of the bumper). In the event of a frontal impact the sensor may automatically deactivate and display a warning to indicate that the sensor needs to be repaired. Even without a malfunction warning, deactivate the system operation if you think that the position of the radar sensor has changed (e.g. due to low-speed frontal impact as during parking manoeuvres). In these cases, go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the radar sensor realigned or replaced.*

PARK SENSORS SYSTEM

(where provided)

126)

47) 48) 49)

VERSIONS WITH 4 SENSORS

The parking sensors, located in the rear bumper fig. 178, detect the presence of any obstacles and warn the driver about them, through an acoustic signal and, where provided, visual indications on the instrument panel display.

178 **07176S0001EM**

Engagement/disengagement

To disengage the system press button fig. 179.

The LED in the button will light up or not when the system switches from on to off (and vice versa).

179 **07176S0002EM**

The LED on the button is off with the system engaged, and on with the system disengaged or in the case of a failure.

If the button is pressed with a system failure, the LED flashes for about 5 seconds, then it stays on constantly.

System activation/deactivation

The system, when engaged, is automatically activated by engaging the reverse gear, while it is deactivated by engaging another gear.

Acoustic signal

When reverse is engaged and there is an obstacle behind the car, an acoustic signal with variable frequency is activated:

❒ increases as the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle decreases;

❒ becomes continuous when the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than 12 in (30 cm) and stops if the distance increases;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

❒ is constant if the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is unchanged.

If several obstacles are detected by the sensors, only the nearest one is considered.

Indication on display

Park Sensors system indications appear on the Connect system display. To access the function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: “Settings”, “Driver assistance”, “Parking sensors”, “Mode” and “Sound and Display”.

The system indicates the presence of an obstacle by displaying a single arc in one of the possible areas, in accordance with the distance of the object and the position in relation to the vehicle.

If the obstacle is detected in the rear central area, a single arc will be displayed as the obstacle approaches, first constant, then flashing, in addition to an acoustic signal.

If the obstacle is detected in the rear left and/or right area, a single flashing arc will be shown in the corresponding area on the display and the system will emit an acoustic signal, either at frequent intervals or constantly.

In general, the vehicle is closer to the obstacle when a single flashing arc is shown on the display and the acoustic signal becomes continuous.

If several obstacles are detected simultaneously in the rear area, the display will show all of them, regardless of the area in which they were detected. The colour on the display depends on the distance from and position of the obstacle.

It is possible to exit from the display screen by pressing the Rotary Pad. In any case, the audible signal will remain active.

Fault indication

Parking sensor faults, if any, will be indicated when reverse is engaged by a message on the instrument panel display (see description in the "Warning lights and messages" paragraph, "Knowing the instrument panel" chapter).

Messages on the display

In case of system failure, a dedicated message appears on the instrument panel for about 5 seconds.

❒ *Cleaning the front sensors*: if the display shows messages requiring the front sensor cleaning, make sure that the outer surface and the underside of the bumper is free of dirt (e.g. snow, mud, ice, etc.). After performing this check, place the ignition device in STOP position, then turn it to the ON position and check whether the messages are no longer displayed. If messages are still displayed, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

❒ *Audio system not available*: if the display shows the message that the audio system is not available, it means that the acoustic signal will be emitted by the instrument panel.

Operation with a trailer

The operation of the sensors is automatically deactivated when the trailer's electric plug is inserted in the car's tow hook socket. The sensors are automatically reactivated when the trailer's cable plug is removed.

Important notes

When parking, take the utmost care over obstacles that may be above or under the sensor. Objects close to the vehicle are not detected under certain circumstances and could therefore cause damage to the vehicle or be damaged.

Some conditions may influence the performance of the parking system:

❒ reduced sensor sensitivity and a reduction in the parking assistance system performance could be due to the presence of: ice, snow, mud, thick paint, on the surface of the sensor;

❒ the sensor may detect a non-existent obstacle ("echo interference") due to mechanical interference, for example when washing the vehicle, in rain (strong wind), hail;

❒ the signals sent by the sensor can also be altered by the presence of ultrasonic systems (e.g. pneumatic brake systems of trucks or pneumatic drills) near the vehicle;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

❒ parking assistance system performance can also be influenced by the position of the sensors, for example due to a change in the ride setting (caused by wear to the shock absorbers, suspension), or by changing tyres, overloading the vehicle or carrying out specific tuning operations that require the vehicle to be lowered;
❒ the presence of a tow hook without trailer, which may interfere with the correct operation of the parking sensors. Before using the Park Sensors system, it is recommended to remove the removable tow hook ball assembly and the relevant attachment from the vehicle when the latter is not used for towing operations. Failure to comply with this prescription may cause personal injuries or damage to vehicles or obstacles since, when the continuous acoustic signal is emitted, the tow hook ball is already in a position that is much closer to the obstacle than the rear bumper. If you wish to leave the tow hook fitted without towing a trailer, it is advisable to contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership for the Park Sensors system update operations because the tow hook could be detected as an obstacle by the central sensors.
❒ the presence of adhesives on the sensors. Therefore, take care not to place adhesives on the sensors.

VERSIONS WITH 8 SENSORS

The parking sensors, located in the front (fig. 180) and rear (fig. 181) bumper, detect the presence of any obstacles and warn the driver through an acoustic signal and, where provided, visual indications on the instrument panel display.

180 07176S0003EM

181 07176S0001EM

Engagement/disengagement

To disengage the system press button fig. 179.
The LED in the button will light up or not when the system switches from on to off (and vice versa).
The LED on the button is off with the system engaged, and on with the system disengaged or in the case of a failure.
If the button is pressed with a system failure, the LED flashes for about 5 seconds, then it stays on constantly.

System activation/deactivation

When the reverse gear is engaged and the system is on, the front and rear sensors are activated. If a different gear is engaged, the rear sensors are deactivated, while the front sensors remain active until 10 mph (15 km/h) are exceeded.

IMPORTANT In particular operating conditions the system could start detecting the obstacle only after the car has moved slightly (a few centrimetres).

Acoustic signal

In the presence of an obstacle at the front or the rear of the car, an acoustic signal with variable frequency is activated:
❒ increases as the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle decreases;
❒ becomes continuous when the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is less than 12 in (30 cm) and

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

stops if the distance increases;
❒ is constant if the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle is unchanged.

If the sensors detect several front and rear obstacles, the acoustic signal concerning the closest obstacle is emitted, or an intermittent signal if the obstacles are at the same distance.

When the system emits an acoustic signal, the volume of the Connect system, if activated, is automatically lowered.

Indication on display

The Park Sensors system signals are shown along with an acoustic indication only if the function was enabled on the Connect system. To access the function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Driver assistance", "Parking sensors", "Mode" and "Sound and Display".

The system indicates the presence of an obstacle by displaying a single arc in one of the possible areas, in accordance with the distance of the object and the position in relation to the vehicle.

If the obstacle is detected in the front or rear central area, a single arc will be displayed as the obstacle approaches, first constant, then flashing, in addition to an acoustic signal.

If the obstacle is detected in the front or rear left and/or right area, a single flashing arc will be shown in the corresponding area on the display and the system will emit an acoustic signal, either at frequent intervals or constantly.

If several obstacles are detected simultaneously in the front and rear area, the display will show all of them, regardless of the area in which they were detected.

In general, the vehicle is closer to the obstacle when a single or several flashing arcs are shown on the display and the acoustic signal becomes continuous. The colour on the display depends on the distance from and position of the obstacle.

It is possible to exit from the display screen by pressing the Rotary Pad. In any case, the audible signal will remain active.

Fault indication

Parking sensor faults, if any, will be indicated by a message on the display on the instrument panel (see description in the "Warning lights and messages" paragraph, "Knowing the instrument panel" chapter).

Messages on the display

In case of system failure, a dedicated message appears on the instrument panel for about 5 seconds.

❒ *Cleaning the front or rear sensors*: if the display shows messages requiring the front or rear sensor cleaning, make sure that the outer surface and the underside of the bumper is free of dirt (e.g. snow, mud, ice, etc.). After performing this check, place the ignition device in STOP position, then turn it to the ON position and check whether the messages are no longer displayed. If messages are still displayed, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

❒ *Audio system not available*: if the display shows the message that the audio system is not available, it means that the acoustic signal will be emitted by the instrument panel.

Operation with a trailer

The operation of the rear sensors is automatically deactivated when the trailer's electric plug is inserted in the vehicle's tow hook socket, while the front sensors stay active and can provide acoustic and visual warnings. The rear sensors are automatically reactivated when the trailer's cable plug is removed.

Important notes

Some conditions may influence the performance of the parking system:

❒ reduced sensor sensitivity and a reduction in the parking assistance system performance could be due to the presence of: ice, snow, mud, thick paint, on the surface of the sensor;

❒ the sensor may detect a non-existent obstacle ("echo interference") due to mechanical interference, for example when washing the vehicle, in rain (strong wind), hail;

❒ the signals sent by the sensor can also be altered by the presence of ultrasonic

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

systems (e.g. pneumatic brake systems of trucks or pneumatic drills) near the vehicle;

❒ parking assistance system performance can also be influenced by the position of the sensors, for example due to a change in the ride setting (caused by wear to the shock absorbers, suspension), or by changing tyres, overloading the vehicle or carrying out specific tuning operations that require the vehicle to be lowered;

❒ the presence of a tow hook without trailer, which may interfere with the correct operation of the parking sensors. Before using the Park Sensors system, it is recommended to remove the removable tow hook ball assembly and the relevant attachment from the vehicle when the latter is not used for towing operations. Failure to comply with this prescription may cause personal injuries or damage to vehicles or obstacles since, when the continuous acoustic signal is emitted, the tow hook ball is already in a position that is much closer to the obstacle than the rear bumper. If you wish to leave the tow hook fitted without towing a trailer, it is advisable to contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership for the Park Sensors system update operations because the tow hook could be detected as an obstacle by the central sensors.

❒ the presence of adhesives on the sensors. Therefore, take care not to place adhesives on the sensors.

WARNING

126) *Parking and other potentially dangerous manoeuvres are, however, always the driver's responsibility. When performing these operations, always make sure that there are no other people (especially children) or animals on the route you want to take. The parking sensors are an aid for the driver, but the driver must never allow their attention to lapse during potentially dangerous manoeuvres, even those executed at low speeds.*

IMPORTANT

47) *The sensors must be clean of mud, dirt, snow or ice in order for the system to operate correctly. Be careful not to scratch or damage the sensors while cleaning them. Avoid using dry, rough or hard cloths. The sensors should be washed using clean water with the addition of car shampoo if necessary. When using special washing equipment such as high pressure jets or steam cleaning, clean the sensors very quickly keeping the jet more than 10 cm away.*

48) *Have interventions on the bumper in the area of the sensors carried out only by an Alfa Romeo Dealership. Interventions on the bumper that are not carried out properly may compromise the operation of the parking sensors.*

49) *Only have the bumpers repainted or any retouches to the paintwork in the area of the sensors carried out by an Alfa Romeo Dealership. Incorrect paint application could affect the operation of the parking sensors.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (LDW) SYSTEM

DESCRIPTION

50) 51) 52) 53)

The Lane Departure Warning system makes use of a camera located on the windscreen to detect the lane limits and calculate the position of the vehicle within such limits, in order to make sure that it remains inside the lane.

When one or both lane limits are detected and the vehicle passes over one without the driver's say-so (direction indicator not turned on), the system emits an acoustic signal.

If the vehicle continues to go beyond the line of the lane without any intervention from the driver, the surpassed line will light up on the display (left or right) to urge the driver to bring the vehicle back into the limits of the lane.

SYSTEM ACTIVATION/DEACTIVATION

The system is activated/deactivated by pressing the button, fig. 182

When the engine is started the system is always activated.

182 07226S0001EM

Activation conditions

Once switched on, the system becomes active only if the following conditions are met:

❒ the vehicle speed is above 37 mph (60 km/h);

❒ the lane limit lines are visible at least on one side;

❒ there are suitable visibility conditions;

❒ the road is straight or with wide radius bends;

❒ a suitable distance is kept from the vehicle in front;

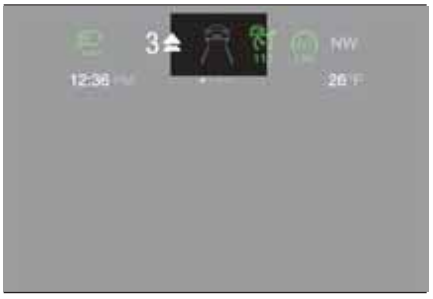
❒ the direction indicator (for leaving the lane) is not active.

SYMBOLS AND MESSAGES ON THE DISPLAY

The Lane Departure Warning system also advises the driver when the vehicle changes lane by showing symbols and messages on the instrument panel display fig. 183.

183 07226S0002EM

When the system is active and the lane limits have not been detected, the display shows a specific grey icon, fig. 184.

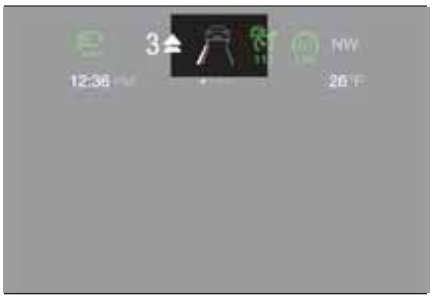


184 07226S0007EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

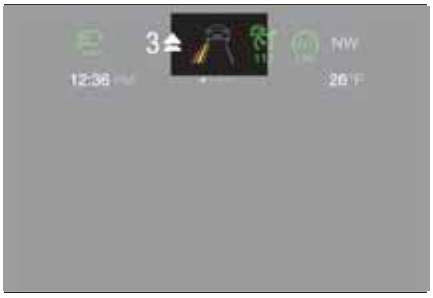
Exiting a lane with detection of a single limit

When the system is active and only, for example, the left lane limit has been detected, the detected lane lights up in white on the display; the system is ready to provide visual warnings on the display in the event of unintentional exiting of the lane (direction indicator not activated) to the left, fig. 185



185 07226S0003EM

When the system detects that the vehicle has approached the lane line and is about to pass it, the left line on the display lights up in yellow, fig. 186.

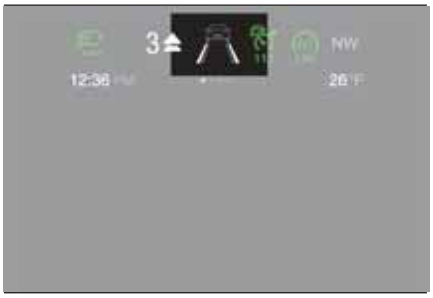


186 07226S0004EM

The system operates in the same way, but mirrored, in the event of exiting the right lane when only the right lane limit has been detected.

Exiting a lane with detection of both limits

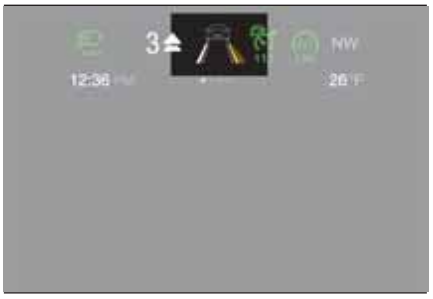
When the system is active, the lane lines on the display become white to indicate the successful detection of the limits, fig. 187.



187 07226S0005EM

The system is ready to provide indications in case it is accidentally abandoned (direction indicator not engaged).

In accordance with the different conditions detected, the system can attract the attention of the driver by altering the lines that identify the lanes on the display. In particular, the system can alter their colour (from white to yellow and vice versa), increase their thickness, fig. 188



188 07226S0006EM

If a line is crossed, it is signalled by an acoustic signal as well. The signal is emitted from the loudspeakers on the side of the lane limit which is being crossed (eg. if the vehicle is exceeding the left line of the lane, the acoustic signal will come from the loudspeakers on the left).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing the system settings

The system's sensitivity can be set via the Connect system.

To access the function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Safety", "Lane Departure Warning" and "Sensitivity". The possible options are:

- High;
- Low.

System limited operation signal

54) 55)

If the dedicated message is shown on the display, a condition limiting the system operation may have occurred. The possible reasons of this limitation are something blocking the camera view or a fault.

If an obstruction is signalled, clean the area of the windscreen by the interior rear view mirror.

Although the vehicle can still be driven in normal conditions, the system may be not completely available.

When the conditions limiting the system functions end, this will go back to normal and complete operation. Should the fault persist, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

System failure signalling

If the system switches off and the system appears on the display, it means that there is a fault on the system.

In this case, it is still possible to drive the vehicle, but you are advised to contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.

IMPORTANT

50) *Projecting loads on the roof of the vehicle may interfere with the correct operation of the camera. Before starting make sure the load is correctly positioned, in order not to cover the camera operating range.*
51) *If the windscreen must be replaced due to scratches, chipping or breakage, contact exclusively an Alfa Romeo Dealership. Do not replace the windscreen on your own, risk of malfunction! It is advisable to replace the windscreen if it is damaged in the area of the camera.*
52) *Do not tamper with nor operate on the camera. Do not close the openings in the aesthetic cover located under the interior rear view mirror. In the event of a failure of the camera, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*
53) *Do not cover the operating range of the camera with stickers or other objects. Also pay attention to other objects on the bonnet (e.g. a layer of snow) and make sure they do not interfere with the camera*
54) *The camera may have limited or absent operation due to weather conditions such as: heavy rain, hail, thick fog, heavy snow, formation of ice layers on the windscreen.*
55) *Camera operation may also be compromised by the presence of dust, condensation, dirt or ice on the windscreen, by traffic conditions (e.g. vehicles that are driving not aligned with yours, vehicle driving in a transverse or opposite way on the same lane, bend with a small radius of curvature), by road surface conditions and by driving conditions (e.g. off-road driving). Make sure the windscreen is always clean. Use specific detergents and clean cloths to avoid scratching the windscreen. The camera operation may also be limited or absent in some driving, traffic and road surface conditions.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REAR BACK-UP CAMERA / DYNAMIC GRIDLINES

DESCRIPTION

The Rear Back-up Camera is located on the boot, near the opening button, fig. 189.

189 07186S0001EM

127)

56)

Camera activation/deactivation

The function can be activated/ deactivated on the Connect system.

Activating the device

To access the function, on the main menu select the following items in sequence: "Settings", "Driver assistance" and "Rear Back-up Camera". The following sub-menu appears:

❒ Active

❒ Switch-off delay;

❒ Grille.

Select "Activate" to activate the camera view on the Connect system display.

Every time reverse is engaged, the display of the Connect system, fig. 190, shows the area around the vehicle, as seen by the Rear Back-up Camera.

190 07186S0002EM

The images are shown on the display together with a warning message.

NOTE The displayed image may look a bit distorted.

By activating the "Switch-off delay" function, the display could continue to show the image transmitted by the camera for a few more seconds, even if the reverse gear is disengaged, afterwards the display will show again the previously active screen.

SYMBOLS AND MESSAGES ON THE DISPLAY

Indications on the display

Through the Connect system settings, by activating the "Camera Gridlines" function, you can see the gridlines on the display. If activated, the grid is positioned on the image to highlight the width of the vehicle and the expected reversing path in accordance with the steering wheel position.

A superimposed central broken line indicates the centre of the vehicle to facilitate parking manoeuvres or tow hook alignment. The various coloured areas indicate the distance from the rear of the vehicle.

The table below shows the approximate distances for each area fig. 190:

Area	Distance from the rear of the vehicle
Red	0–30 cm (0–11.8 inches)
Yellow	30 cm–1 m (11.8 inches to 3.3 feet)
Green	1 m or more (3.3 feet or more)

Messages on the display

If the boot is lifted, the camera will not detect any obstacle in the vehicle rear part. The display will show a dedicated warning message.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In this case, lower the boot by the suitable handle, pressing next to the lock until it clicks (see the "Luggage Compartment" paragraph in the "Getting to know the car" chapter).

IMPORTANT NOTES

IMPORTANT In some circumstances, such as with ice, snow or mud on the surface of the camera, the camera sensitivity may be reduced.

IMPORTANT If the boot is to be re-painted following to repairs, make sure the paint does not get in contact with the camera.

IMPORTANT When parking, take the utmost care over obstacles that may be above or under the camera range.

WARNING

127) *Parking and other potentially dangerous manoeuvres are, however, always the driver's responsibility. While carrying out these manoeuvres, always make sure that no people (especially children) or animals are in the area concerned. The camera is an aid for the driver, but the driver must never allow his/her attention to lapse during potentially dangerous manoeuvres, even those executed at low speeds. Always keep a slow speed, so as to promptly brake in the case of obstacles.*

IMPORTANT

56) *It is vital, for correct operation, that the camera is always kept clean and free from any mud, dirt, snow or ice. Be careful not to scratch or damage the camera while cleaning it. Avoid using dry, rough or hard cloths. The camera must be washed using clean water, with the addition of car shampoo if necessary. In washing stations which use steam or high-pressure jets, clean the camera quickly, keeping the nozzle more than 10 cm away from the sensors. Also, do not apply stickers to the camera.*

REFUELLING THE VEHICLE

PETROL ENGINES

Before refuelling, make sure that the fuel type is correct.

Also stop the engine before refuelling.

Only use unleaded petrol with a number of octanes (R.O.N.) not lower than 95 (EN228 specification).

IMPORTANT Only refuel the vehicle with unleaded petrol with an octane number (R.O.N) not lower than 95, in compliance with European specification EN228. In particular, the 2.9 V6 engine has been designed to comply with all the emission limits while simultaneously guaranteeing minimal consumption and maximum performance, using premium-quality unleaded petrol with octane number (R.O.N.) of 98 or higher.

IMPORTANT Never introduce leaded petrol to the tank, even in small amounts in an emergency, as this would damage the catalytic converter beyond repair.

IMPORTANT An inefficient catalytic converter leads to harmful exhaust emissions, thus contributing to air pollution.

128) 129) 130)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DIESEL ENGINES

Only use Diesel for motor vehicles (EN590 specification).

Operation at low temperatures

If the outside temperature is very low, Diesel thickens due to the formation of paraffin clots with consequent defective operation of the fuel supply system.

In order to avoid these problems, different types of Diesel are distributed according to the season: summer type, winter type and arctic type (cold, mountain areas).

In the event of refuelling with diesel which is unsuitable for the operating temperature, it is advisable to mix the diesel with a specific additive, introducing it to the tank before the anti-freeze and then the diesel.

REFUELLING CAPACITY

To ensure that you fill the tank completely, top up twice after the first click of the fuel supply gun.

Further top-ups could cause faults in the fuel feeding system.

REFUELLING PROCEDURE

The fuel flap is unlocked when the central door locking system is released, while it is automatically locked when the central locking system is applied.

Opening the flap

To refuel proceed as follows:

❒ open flap fig. 191, pressing on the point shown by the arrow;

❒ remove the closing cap;

❒ return the cap to its seat fig. 192;

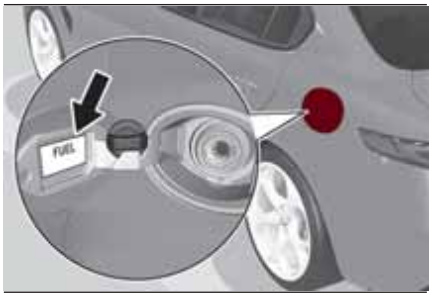
❒ introduce the dispenser in the filler and refuel;

191 07206S0001EM

❒ after refuelling, before removing the dispenser, wait for at least 10 seconds in order for the fuel to flow inside the tank;

❒ then remove the dispenser from the filler, close the plug and then close the flap.

The label indicates the fuel type (UNLEADED FUEL= petrol, DIESEL= diesel fuel), fig. 192.



192 07206S0002EM

Emergency fuel flap opening

In the event of an emergency the fuel flap can be opened by operating from inside the boot.

Proceed as follows:

❒ open the boot and reach the emergency opening cable placed on the side of the fuel filler;

❒ pull the cord to unlock the fuel flap;

❒ open the fuel flap by pressing on it (see the previous instructions).

IMPORTANT If the filler compartment is washed with a high-pressure jet, keep it at a distance of at least 10 in (20 cm).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

128) *Do not apply any object/plug to the end of the filler which is not provided for the car. The use of non-compliant objects/plugs could cause a pressure increase inside the tank, resulting in dangerous situations.*
129) *Do not bring naked flames or lit cigarettes near to the fuel filler: fire risk. Keep your face away from the fuel filler to prevent breathing in harmful vapours.*
130) *Do not use a mobile phone near the refuelling pump: risk of fire.*

SUGGESTIONS FOR DRIVING

SAVING FUEL

Below are some suggestions which may help you save fuel and thus lower the amount of harmful emissions released into the atmosphere.

Vehicle maintenance

Checks and operations should be carried out in accordance with the "Scheduled Servicing Plan" (see chapter "Maintenance and care").

Tyres

Check the tyre pressures at least once every four weeks: if the pressure is too low, consumption levels increase as resistance to rolling is higher.

Unnecessary loads

Do not travel with an overloaded boot. The weight of the vehicle and its arrangement greatly affect fuel consumption and stability.

Electric devices

Use electrical devices only for the amount of time needed. The heated rear window, additional headlights, screen wipers and heater fan require a considerable amount of energy; increasing the current uptake increases fuel consumption (by up to +25% in an urban cycle).

Climate control system

Using the climate control system will increase consumption: use standard ventilation when the temperature outside permits.

Devices for aerodynamic control

The use of non-certified devices for aerodynamic control may adversely affect air drag and consumption levels.

DRIVING STYLE

Starting

Do not warm up the engine at low or high revs when the vehicle is stationary; this causes the engine to warm up more slowly, thereby increasing fuel consumption and emissions. It is therefore advisable to move off immediately, slowly, avoiding high speeds: in this way the engine will warm up more quickly.

Unnecessary actions

Avoid revving up when starting at traffic lights or before stopping the engine. The latter action, as well as double-declutching, is unnecessary and causes increased fuel consumption and pollution.

Gear selection

Use a high gear when traffic and road conditions allow it. Using a low gear for faster acceleration will increase fuel consumption. In the same way, improper use of a high gear increases consumption, emissions and engine wear.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Max. speed

Fuel consumption considerably increases as speed increases. Maintain a constant speed, avoiding unnecessary braking and acceleration, which cost in terms of both fuel consumption and emissions.

Acceleration

Accelerating violently severely affects consumption and emissions: acceleration should be gradual and should not exceed the maximum torque.

CONDITIONS OF USE

Cold starting

Short journeys and frequent cold starts do not allow the engine to reach optimum operating temperature. This results in a significant increase in consumption levels (from +15 to +30% on the urban cycle) and emissions.

Traffic and road conditions

High fuel consumption is caused by heavy traffic, for instance when travelling in a queue with frequent use of low gears or in cities with many traffic lights. Winding mountain roads and rough road surfaces also adversely affect consumption.

Stops in traffic

During prolonged hold-ups (e.g. level crossings) switch off the engine.

TRANSPORTING PASSENGERS

Important notes

IMPORTANT It is extremely dangerous to leave children in a parked vehicle when the temperature outside is very high. The heat inside the passenger compartment may have serious, or even fatal, consequences.

IMPORTANT Never travel in the internal load compartment. In the event of an accident, anyone inside the luggage compartment would be at greater risk of serious or even fatal injury.

IMPORTANT Ensure that all the occupants of the vehicle wear their seat belts correctly and that any children are positioned correctly on the dedicated child restraint systems.

TRANSPORTING ANIMALS

The interventions of the airbags may be dangerous for an animal on the front seat. It is therefore advisable to arrange animals on the rear seat inside dedicated cages restrained by the vehicle's seat belts.

Bear in mind also that, in the event of a sudden braking or an accident, an inadequately restrained animal may be projected within the passenger compartment, risking injury to the animal itself and the other occupants of the vehicle.

EXHAUST GAS

Exhaust emissions are very dangerous, and may be lethal. They contain carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless gas which can cause fainting and poisoning if inhaled.

To avoid inhaling carbon monoxide, take the following measures:

❒ do not keep the engine running in closed spaces;

❒ if, for some reason (e.g. transporting bulky loads), it is necessary to drive with the boot open, close all the windows and run the climate control fan at maximum speed. DO NOT activate air recirculation mode;

❒ should it be necessary to stay on board the stationary vehicle with engine running, adjust the ventilation/heating system and operate the fan in such a way that outside air enter the passenger compartment. Activate the maximum fan speed.

Adequate maintenance of the exhaust system represents the best protection against leaks of carbon monoxide into the passenger compartment.

Should an unusual noise from the exhaust system or the presence of exhaust gas in the passenger compartment be identified, or if the underbody or rear section of the vehicle is damaged, have the entire exhaust system and adjoining bodywork areas checked to identify any components which are broken, damaged,

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

worn or have moved from their correct fitting position. For these operations, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

Open welding or loose connections may permit exhaust gas to enter the passenger compartment.

Check the exhaust system each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change operations. Replace the components where necessary. For these operations, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

QUADRIFOGLIO VERSION

PERFORMANCE

The Alfa Giulia Quadrifoglio is equipped with an engine capable of delivering exceptionally fast acceleration and speed:

❒ Peak power 510 HP at 6500 rpm.
❒ Peak torque 61 kgm at 2500 rpm.
❒ Top speed: 191 mph (307 km/h).
❒ Acceleration from 0 to 60 mph (100 km/h): 3.9 seconds.

For safe driving, it is essential, particularly during the first days of use, to get to know the car by driving carefully and gradually discovering its performance.

BRAKES

131)

The car braking system may optionally fit four carbon-ceramic material brake discs, one on each wheel.

In order to guarantee the maximum braking capacity for the first use, Alfa Romeo performs a "run-in" procedure for discs and pads directly at the factory.

The use of carbon-ceramic material brake discs guarantees braking features (better deceleration/pedal load ratio, braking distances, fading resistance) proportional to the dynamic features of the car in addition to considerably decreasing the unsprung component weight.

The materials used and the structural features of the system could generate anomalous noises which have absolutely no adverse effect on correct operation and reliability of the braking system.

Greater pressure may need to be applied to the brake pedal the first time to keep the same braking capacities in presence of condensation or salt on the braking surfaces, for example after washing or if the car is not used for a long time.

IMPORTANT Given the high technological level of this system, any servicing on it must be performed by a Dedicated Alfa Romeo Dealership with the exclusive skills needed for the repair operations.

IMPORTANT In case of intensive, high-performance use of the car, have the condition of the carbon-ceramic material braking system inspected at a Dedicated Alfa Romeo Dealership, as shown on the Scheduled Servicing Plan.

DRIVING ON RACE TRACKS

Before driving on a track using a racing style, it is necessary to:

❒ Attend a race track driving course.
❒ Check the liquid levels in the engine compartment. For more information, see the "Checking levels" paragraph in the "Servicing and care" chapter of the Owner Handbook.
❒ Have the car inspected at a Dedicated Alfa Romeo Dealership centre.

Remember that the car was not designed to be driven exclusive on the race track and that this use increases stress and component wear.

Preheating the carbon ceramic material brake discs

The brake discs must be warmed up to make them fully efficient. You are advised to perform the following procedure:

❒ brake nine times from 80 mph (130 km/h) to 18 mph (30 km/h) with deceleration equal to 0.7g (the longitudinal acceleration value is shown on the instrument panel display by setting RACE mode and selecting the "Performance" page) with 20 second intervals between brake applications; keep the car at a speed comprised between 36 mph (60 km/h) and 60 mph (100 km/h) and do not brake for 240 seconds to allow the brakes to cool down;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

❒ then brake three times from 120 mph (200 km/h) to 18 mph (30 km/h) with deceleration equal to 1.1g (ABS operation) with 30 second intervals between brake applications; keep the car at a speed comprised between 36 mph (60 km/h) and 60 mph (100 km/h) and do not brake for 300 seconds to allow the brakes to cool down.

WARNING

131) *After the car has been stopped for a long time in a very cold place (temperature below 0 °C), for the first five brakes, the carbon-ceramic braking system efficiency is not optimal, so you may need slightly more pressure on the brake pedal.*

TOWING TRAILERS

(where provided)

For towing caravans or trailers the vehicle must be fitted with an approved tow hook and an adequate electrical system. Should aftermarket installation be requested, this must be carried out by specialists.

Install any specific and/or additional door mirrors as specified by the Highway Code.

Remember that when towing a trailer, steep hills are harder to climb, braking distances increase and overtaking takes longer depending on the overall weight of the trailer.

Engage a low gear when driving downhill, rather than constantly using the brake.

The weight the trailer exerts on the vehicle tow hook reduces the vehicle's loading capacity by the same amount. To make sure that the maximum towable weight is not exceeded (given in the vehicle registration document) account should be taken of the fully laden trailer, including accessories and luggage.

Do not exceed the speed limits specific to each country you are driving in, in the case of vehicles towing trailers. In any case, the top speed must not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h).

Any electric brake must be powered directly by the battery through a cable with a cross-section of no less than 0.039 in ^{2} (2.5 mm ^{2}).

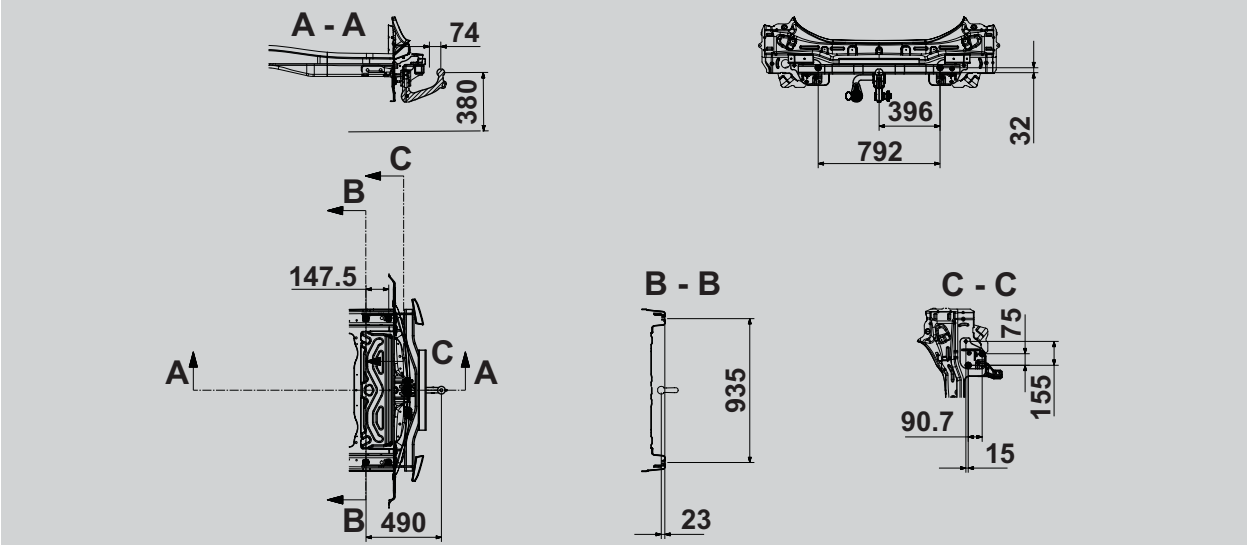
In addition to the electrical branches, the vehicle electrical system can only be connected to the supply cable for an electric brake and to the cable for an internal light for the trailer, not exceeding 15 W. For connections, use the preset control unit with a battery cable with section not less than 0.039 in ^{2} (2.5 mm ^{2}).

IMPORTANT The use of auxiliary loads other than external lights (e.g. electric brake) must take place with engine running.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ASSEMBLY SCHEDULE

The tow hook structure must be secured to the body in the points shown in the fig. 193.



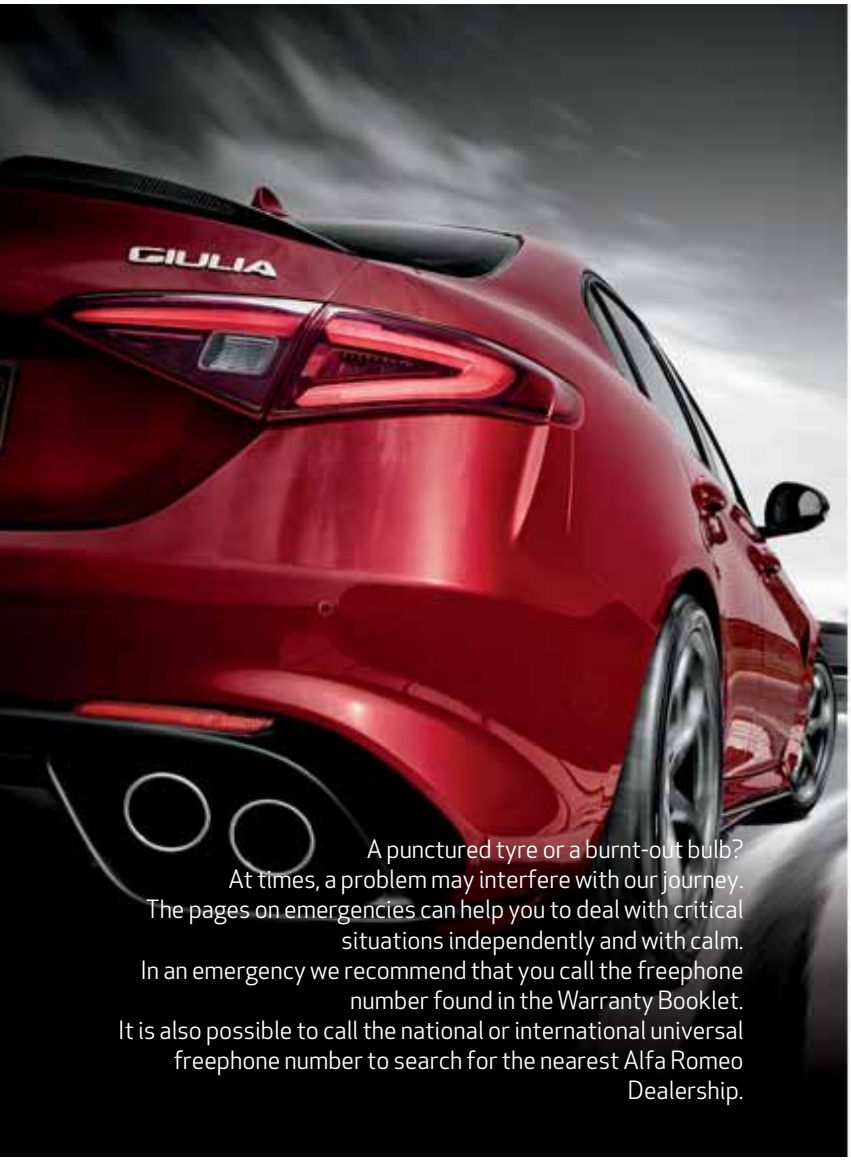
193 07226S0040EM

IMPORTANT Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to install a tow hook.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This page is intentionally left blank

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



A punctured tyre or a burnt-out bulb?
At times, a problem may interfere with our journey.
The pages on emergencies can help you to deal with critical situations independently and with calm.
In an emergency we recommend that you call the freephone number found in the Warranty Booklet.
It is also possible to call the national or international universal freephone number to search for the nearest Alfa Romeo Dealership.

IN AN EMERGENCY

HAZARD WARNING LIGHTS 182
REPLACING A BULB 182
REPLACING FUSES 189
TIRE REPAIR KIT 195
EMERGENCY STARTING 198
FUEL CUT-OFF SYSTEM 201
EMERGENCY REFUELLING 201
ENGINE OVERHEATING. 201
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION GEAR LEVER UNLOCKING 202
BROKEN-DOWN VEHICLE TOWING 203
TOWING THE VEHICLE 205

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HAZARD WARNING LIGHTS

CONTROL

57)

Press the fig. 194 button to switch the hazard warning lights on/off.

When the hazard warning lights are on, the ⇦ and ⇨ warning lights flash.

When you need to move away from the vehicle to look for help, the hazard warning lights will continue flashing even if the ignition device is in the STOP position.

194 08016S0001EM

IMPORTANT The use of hazard warning lights is governed by the highway code of the country you are driving in: comply with legal requirements.

Emergency braking

The hazard lights are switched on and warning lights ⇦ and ⇨ appear on the instrument panel in case of emergency braking and according to the mode selected by the "Alfa DNA™ Pro" selector.

When the "Alfa DNA™ Pro" selector is in position "n" or "a", the activation threshold of the hazard warning lights is higher; on the other hand, in position "d" the sensitivity of the activation is lower than that in the "n" and "a" modes.

With the "Alfa DNA™ Pro" selector in position "RACE" (where provided), the hazard warning lights do not activate.

The lights switch off automatically when emergency braking ceases. For further details about the emergency braking, see the "Active safety systems" paragraph in the "Safety" chapter.

IMPORTANT

57) *A prolonged use of the hazard warning lights may discharge the battery.*

REPLACING A BULB

132) 133) 134)

58)

GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

❒ Before replacing a bulb check the contacts for oxidation;

❒ replace blown bulbs with others of the same type and power;

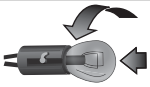
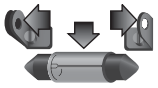
❒ after replacing a headlight bulb, always check its alignment;

❒ when a light is not working, check that the corresponding fuse is intact before changing the bulb. For the location of fuses, refer to the paragraph "If a fuse blows" in this chapter.

IMPORTANT In some particular climate conditions such as low temperature, humidity or after washing the car, a thin condensation layer may form on the internal surfaces of the front and rear headlights. This phenomenon will disappear after switching on the headlights

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TYPES OF BULBS

The vehicle is equipped with the following bulbs	
Glass bulbs (type A): they are press-fitted. Pull to extract.	A
Bayonet-type bulbs (type B): to remove them from their holder, press the bulb and turn it anticlockwise, then extract it.	B 
Tubular bulbs (type C): release them from their contacts to remove.	C 
Halogen bulbs (type D): to remove the bulb, turn the connector to the side and pull it out.	D
Halogen bulbs (type E): to remove the bulb, turn it anticlockwise.	E
Xenon gas discharge bulb (type F): to remove the bulb, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.	F

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Light bulbs	Type	Power	Figure reference
Main beam headlights, front side lights/daylight running lights (DRL) (*)	H15	55/15W	D
Dipped headlights (*)	H7	55 W	D
Front direction indicators (*)	PY24W	24W	B
Fog lights(*)	H11	55 W	E
Main beam/dipped beam headlights (Xenon gas discharge)	D5S	25 W	F
Main beam/dipped beam headlights (Xenon gas discharge)	D3S	35 W	F
Sun visor light	1.5CP	2.1W	C
Glove compartment light	W5W	4 W	A
Boot light	W5W	5 W	A
Puddle lights (under door panel)	W5W	5 W	A

(*) Only for basic version headlight with halogen main beam/dipped beam headlights

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REPLACING AN EXTERNAL BULB

IMPORTANT Only replace the bulb when the engine is off. Also ensure that the engine is cold, to prevent the risk of burns.

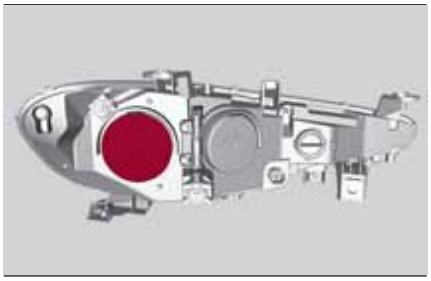
Front light cluster with main beam/dipped beam halogen headlights

Dipped headlights

To change the bulb of these lights, proceed as follows:
❒ remove the top cover from the wheel arch by unscrewing the two fixing screws fig. 195;

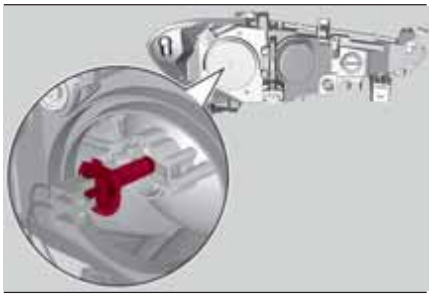
195 08026S0001EM

❒ remove the cover fig. 196;



196 08026S0002EM

❒ remove the bulb/connector assembly from the headlight body fig. 197;

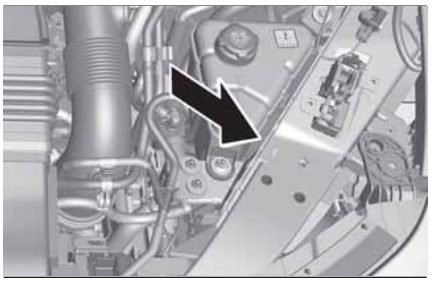


197 08026S0003EM

❒ remove the bulb by sliding it off the connector;
❒ install the new bulb, making sure it is correctly inserted in the connector;
❒ then insert the bulb/connector assembly in the housing on the headlight body and make sure that it is locked correctly;
❒ remount the lid and cover, tightening the fixing bolts.

Main beam headlights

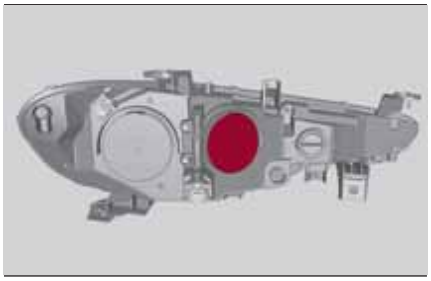
To change the bulb of these lights, proceed as follows:
❒ operating inside the engine compartment fig. 198;



198 08026S0023EM

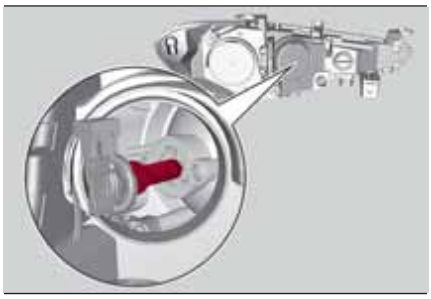
❒ remove the cover fig. 199;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



199 08026S0004EM

❒ turn the bulb, bulb holder and connector assembly anticlockwise and then slide it off the headlight body fig. 200;

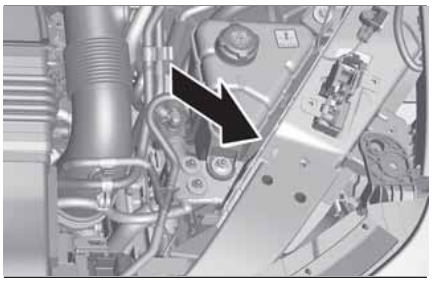


200 08026S0005EM

❒ remove the bulb by sliding it off the bulb holder;
❒ install the new bulb, making sure it is correctly inserted in the bulb holder;
❒ then insert the bulb, bulb holder and connector assembly in the housing on the headlight body and turn it clockwise, making sure that it is locked correctly;
❒ refit the protective cover.

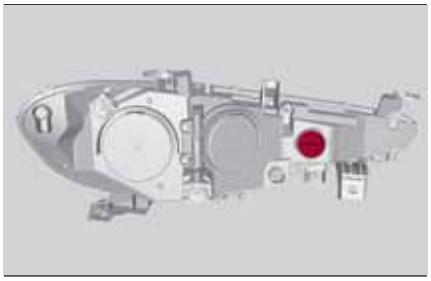
Direction indicators

To change the bulb of these lights, proceed as follows:
❒ operating inside the engine compartment fig. 201;



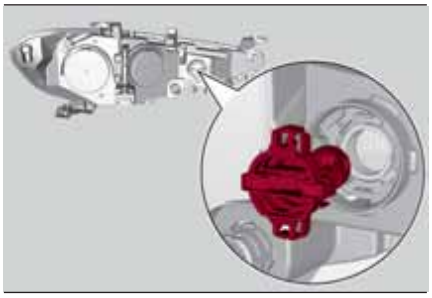
201 08026S0023EM

❒ remove cover by turning it fig. 202;



202 08026S0006EM

❒ release the bulb, bulb holder and connector assembly and then slide it off the headlight body fig. 203;



203 08026S0007EM

❒ remove the bulb by sliding it off the bulb holder;
❒ install the new bulb, making sure it is correctly inserted in the bulb holder;
❒ then insert the bulb, bulb holder and connector assembly in the housing on the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

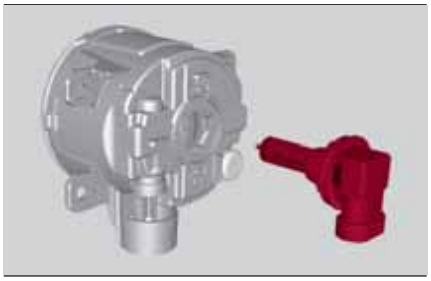
headlight body and turn it clockwise, making sure that it is locked correctly;
❒ refit the protective cover.

Front fog lights

To replace the bulbs, proceed as follows:
❒ remove the lower cover from the wheel arch by unscrewing the two fixing screws fig. 204;

204 08026S0021EM

❒ pull out the bulb-bulb holder unit from the headlight body by turning it anticlockwise fig. 205;



205 08026S0022EM

❒ remove the bulb by sliding it off the bulb holder
❒ install the new bulb, making sure it is correctly inserted in the bulb holder;
❒ then insert the bulb, bulb holder and connector assembly in the housing on the headlight body and turn it clockwise, making sure that it is locked correctly;
❒ refit the cover by tightening the two fixing screws.

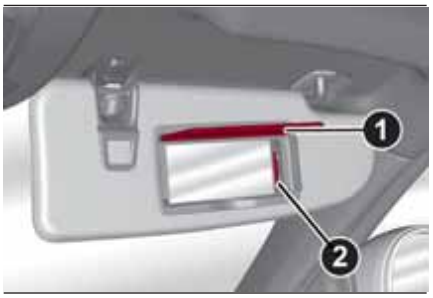
Front light cluster with main beam/dipped beam Xenon gas discharge headlights

To replace the bulbs of the main beam headlights/dipped headlights contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership

REPLACING AN INTERNAL BULB

Courtesy mirror light

To replace the bulbs, proceed as follows:
❒ lift the cover 1 fig. 206 of the mirror and extract the lens, levering at one of the two recesses;



206 08026S0008EM

❒ change the bulb 2, releasing it from the side contacts, then insert the new bulb, making sure that it is correctly fastened between the contacts;
❒ refit the lens, inserting it firstly on one side and then pressing on the other side until it clicks into place;
❒ finally, lower cover 1 of the mirror.

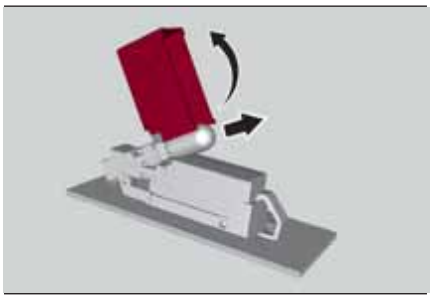
Glove compartment light

To replace the bulb, proceed as follows:
❒ open the glove compartment;
❒ remove the courtesy light working in the point shown by the arrow fig. 207;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

207 08026S0009EM

❒ open protection and replace the bulb, fig. 208;



208 08026S0011EM

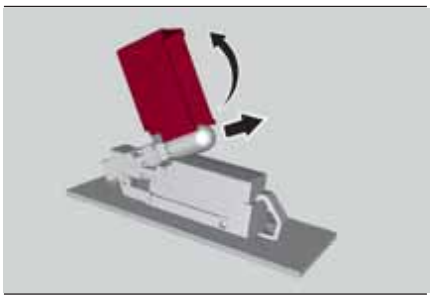
❒ close the cover on the lens;
❒ refit courtesy light, inserting it firstly on one side and then pressing on the other side until it clicks into place;
❒ then replace the glove compartment, ensuring that it locks.

Luggage compartment courtesy lights

To replace the bulbs, proceed as follows:
❒ open the boot and extract the courtesy light working in the point shown by the arrow, fig. 209;

209 08026S0010EM

❒ open protection and replace the bulb, fig. 210;



210 08026S0011EM

❒ close the cover on the lens;
❒ refit the ceiling light in the correct position, inserting it firstly on one side and then pressing on the other side until it clicks into place.

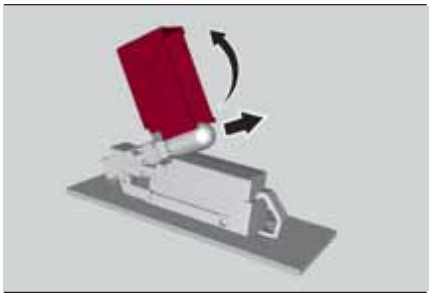
Puddle lights on door panel

To replace the bulb, proceed as follows:
❒ open the door and extract the ceiling light, working in the point shown by the arrow, fig. 211;

211 08026S0012EM

❒ open protection and replace the bulb, fig. 212;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



212 08026S0011EM

❒ close the cover on the lens;
❒ refit the ceiling light in the correct position, inserting it firstly on one side and then pressing on the other side until it clicks into place.

WARNING

132) *Before replacing the bulb, wait for the exhaust ducts to cool down: DANGER OF SCALDING!*
133) *Modifications or repairs to the electric system that are not carried out properly or do not take the system technical specifications into account can cause malfunctions leading to the risk of fire.*
134) *Halogen bulbs contain pressurised gas, in the case of breakage they may burst causing glass fragments to be projected outwards.*

IMPORTANT

58) *Halogen bulbs must be handled holding the metallic part only. Touching the transparent part of the bulb with your fingers may reduce the intensity of the emitted light and even reduce the lifespan of the bulb. In the event of accidental contact, wipe the bulb with a cloth moistened with alcohol and let the bulb dry.*

REPLACING FUSES

GENERAL INFORMATION

135) 136) 137) 138) 139)

59) 60)

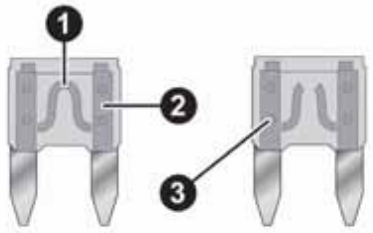
Fuses protect the electrical system: they intervene (blow) in the event of a failure or improper action on the system.

When a device does not work, check the condition of its protection fuse: the filament 1 must be intact. If it is not, replace the blown fuse with another with the same amperage (same colour).

2 = intact fuse.

3 = fuse with damaged filament.

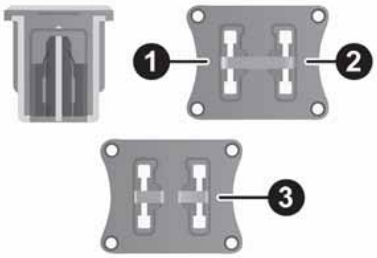
fig. 213 : MINI fuse.



213 08036S0001EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

fig. 214: J-CASE fuse.



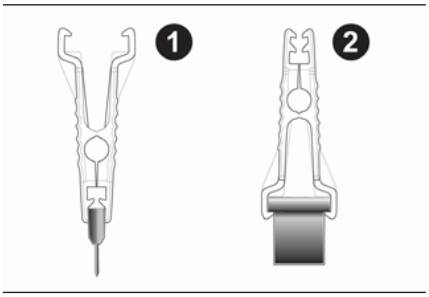
214 08036S0002EM

Fuse extracting pliers

To replace a fuse, use the pliers hooked to the boot fusebox cover fig. 215.

215 08036S0053EM

Grab the pliers from the upper tabs, press them and extract the pliers pulling upwards.
The pliers fig. 216 have two different ends, specifically designed to remove the different types of fuses present in the vehicle:
❒ **1**: MINI fuse;
❒ **2**: J-CASE fuse.



216 08036S0005EM

After use, refit the pliers in position, proceeding as follows:
❒ grasp the pliers from the upper tabs;
❒ press the pliers in their housing, pushing downwards, until they click into place.

FUSE LOCATION

The fuses, which can be replaced by the user, are grouped in two boxes below the passenger side foot board and inside the boot.

CONTROL UNIT UNDER PASSENGER SIDE FOOTBOARD

To access the fuses, proceed as follows:
❒ lift the upper end of the footboard 1 fig. 217 on the passenger side, pulling it to release the 2 buttons;

217 08036S0010EM

❒ remove the panel 2 fig. 218, extracting it downward, after unscrewing the two fixing hooks;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

218 08036S0011EM

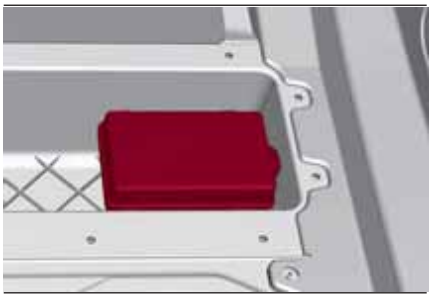
❒ the fuses are freely accessible on the control unit.

The number identifying the electrical component corresponding to each fuse is shown on the control unit cover.

After replacing the fuse, make sure that panel 2 and footboard 1 are correctly locked.

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

To access the fuses, proceed as follows:
❒ lift the load carrying plane;
❒ remove the control unit cover fig. 219;



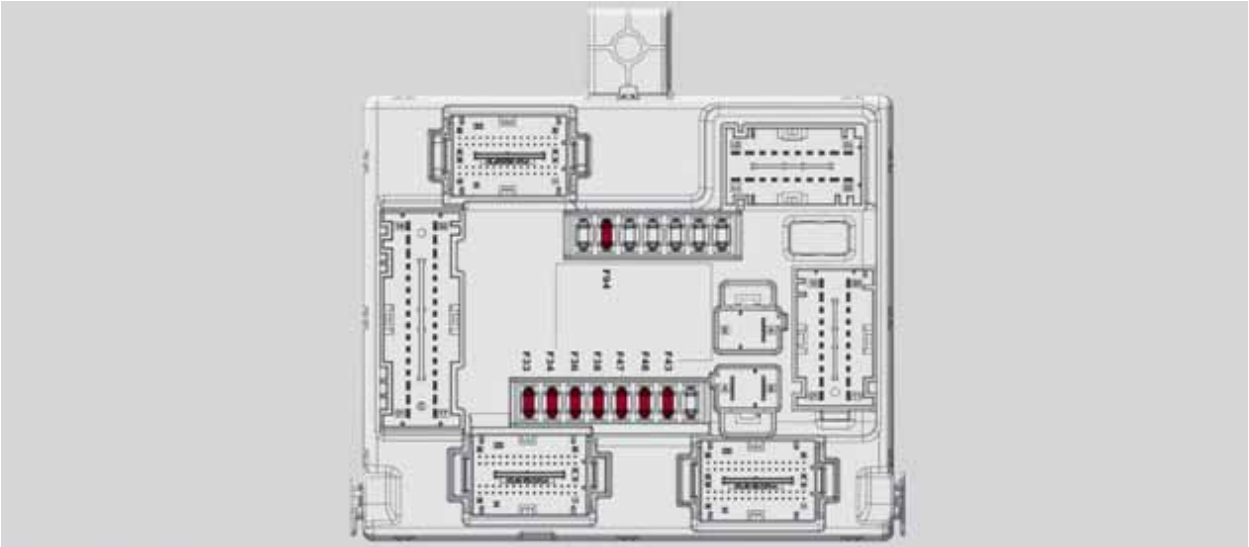
219 08036S0014EM

The number identifying the electrical component corresponding to each fuse is shown on the cover.

After replacing a fuse, make sure that you have closed cover correctly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CONTROL UNIT UNDER PASSENGER SIDE FOOTBOARD



220 08036S0013EM

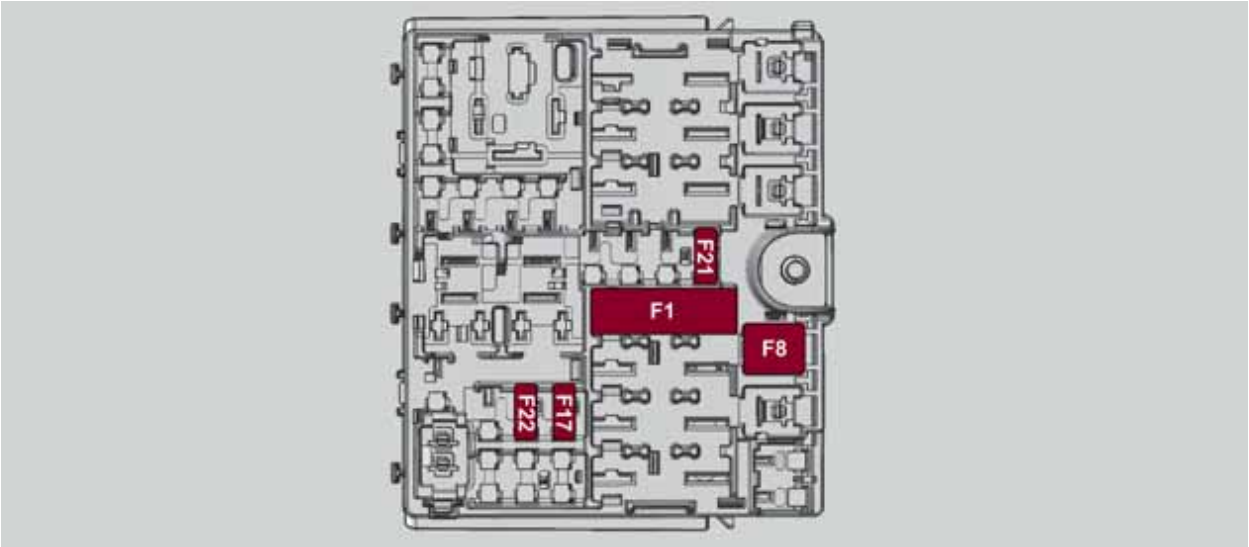
FUNCTION	FUSE	AMPERE
Front electric window (driver side)	F33	25
Front electric window (passenger side)	F34	25
Power supply for Connect system, Climate Control system, Alarm, Electric door mirror folding, EOBD system, USB port	F36	15
Power Lock Device (Driver side door unlocking - where provided)/Door unlocking, Central locking	F38	20
Windscreen washer pump	F43	20

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FUNCTION	FUSE	AMPERE
Rear left electric window	F47	25
Rear right electric window	F48	25
Heater rear window coil, cigar lighter	F94	15

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX



221

08036S0015EM

FUNCTION	FUSE	AMPERE
Tow hook module (TTM)	F1	40
Hi-Fi system	F8	30
KL15/a USB Recharge (C070)	F17	7.5
I-Drive / USB / AUX port	F21	10
KL15/a 12V Power outlet (R053)	F22	20

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WARNING

135) *Never replace a fuse with another with a higher amp rating; DANGER OF FIRE.*
136) *Before replacing a fuse, make sure that the ignition device is at STOP and that all devices are switched off and/or disconnected.*
137) *Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership if a safety system (airbags, brakes), transmission system (engine, gearbox) or steering system general protection fuse blows.*
138) *If a fuse blows again, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*
139) *If a general protective fuse (MAXI-FUSE, MEGA-FUSE, MIDI-FUSE) blows, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*

IMPORTANT

59) *Never replace a fuse with metal wires or anything else.*
60) *If it is necessary to wash the engine compartment, take care not to directly hit the fuse box and the window wiper motors with the water jet.*

TIRE REPAIR KIT

DESCRIPTION

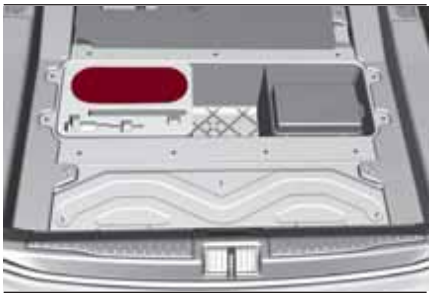
140) 141) 142) 147) 143) 144) 145) 146) 148) 149)

61)

3)

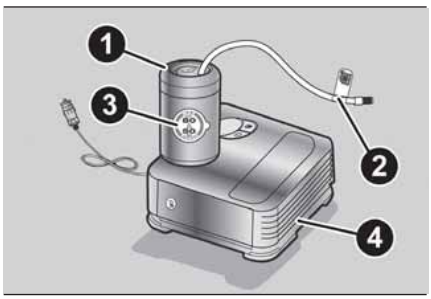
If a tyre is punctured, proceed as follows to use the Tire Repair Kit:
❒ stop the vehicle in a position that is not dangerous for oncoming traffic where you can repair the tyre safely, as far as possible from the side of the road;
❒ engage the hazard warning lights and the electric parking brake;
❒ engage first gear or reverse or, for versions with automatic transmission, activate the P mode (Park);
❒ stop the engine and put on the reflective safety jacket (for your own safety and in compliance with national laws) before getting out of the vehicle;
❒ when the situation requires it (for your own safety and to comply with the regulations in force in the country where you are), take the warning triangle from the lining of the luggage compartment lid and position it at a suitable distance from the car.

To access the Tire Repair Kit, open the boot, lift the load platform fig. 222.



222 08066S0001EM

The Tire Repair Kit includes also:
❒ one tank 1 fig. 223 containing the sealing fluid, provided with: filler tube 2 and adhesive label 3 with the writing "Max. 50 mph (80 km/h)", to be attached in a position easily visible to the driver (eg. on the dashboard) after repairing the tyre;



223 08066S0002EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

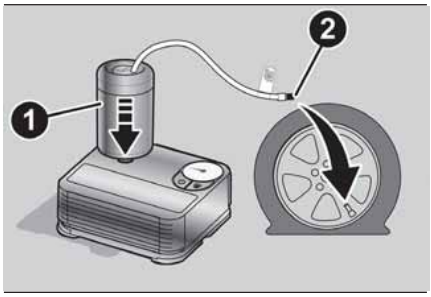
❒ compressor 4 complete with pressure gauge and connectors;
❒ an instruction leaflet, to refer to for prompt and correct use of the Tire Repair Kit and that must be then given to the personnel dealing with the tyre treated with sealant;
❒ a pair of protective gloves;
❒ some adaptors, for inflating different elements.

IMPORTANT The sealing fluid is effective with external temperatures of between -40°F (-40°C) and 122°F (+50°C). The sealing fluid has an expiry date.

INFLATION PROCEDURE

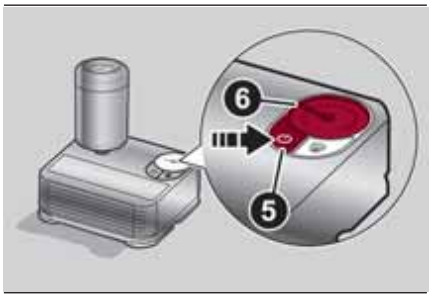
141) 140) 147) 143) 144) 145) 146) 147) 148)

Proceed as follows:
❒ engage the electric parking brake. Insert the tank 1 fig. 224 containing the sealing liquid in the proper compressor holder, pressing down hard. Unscrew the tyre valve cap, take out the filler hose 2 and tighten the ring nut on the tyre valve;



224 0806650004EM

❒ make sure that switch 5 fig. 225 of the compressor is in position O (OFF);



225 0806650005EM

❒ insert the plug into the socket on the central tunnelfig. 226, start the engine;

226 0806650006EM

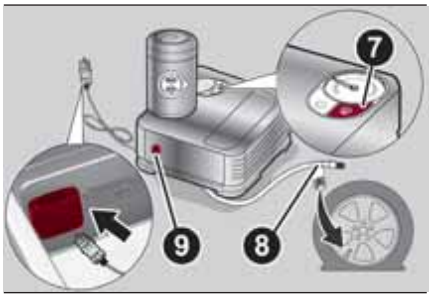
❒ start the compressor, placing the switch 5 fig. 225 to position I (ON);
❒ inflate the tyre to the pressure indicated in the "Rims and Tyres" paragraph (see "Technical data" chapter). In order to obtain a more precise reading, check the pressure value on pressure gauge 6 fig. 225 with the compressor off;
❒ if after 15 minutes pressure is not at least 1.8 bar (26.1 psi), disengage the compressor from the valve and power socket, then move the vehicle forwards approx. five tyre turns in order to distribute the sealing fluid inside the tyre evenly, then repeat the inflation operation;
❒ if you still cannot obtain a pressure of at least 1,8 bar (26 psi) within 15 minutes from the compressor switching on, do not drive off and contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership;
❒ after having driven for about 5 mph

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(8 km), stop, engage the electric parking brake and recheck the tyre pressure;
❒ if the pressure is less than 1,8 bar (26 psi), do not go back into gear but see an Alfa Romeo dealer;
❒ if a pressure value of at least 1,8 bar (26 psi) is detected, restore the correct pressure (with engine running and electric parking brake), resume driving immediately and drive with great care to an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

CHECKING AND RESTORING TYRE PRESSURE

The compressor can also be used to check and, if necessary, restore the tyre pressure.
Proceed as follows:
❒ Release quick connector 8 fig. 227 and connect it directly to the valve of the tyre to be inflated.
❒ Press air release button 7.

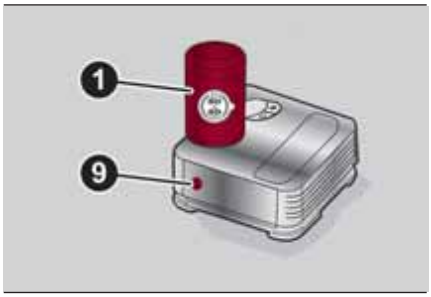


227 08066S0008EM

SEALANT BOTTLE REPLACEMENT

IMPORTANT Only use original cartridges, which can be purchased at an Alfa Romeo dealership.

Proceed as follows:
❒ Remove the tank 1 fig. 228 pressing the unhooking button 9;
❒ insert the new tank pressing it downwards hard.



228 08066S0009EM

WARNING

140) *Punctures on the sides of the tire may not be repaired. Do not use the Tire Repair kit if the tyre was damaged as a result of being used when underinflated.*
141) *Wear the protective gloves provided with the Tire Repair kit.*
142) *Apply the adhesive label where it can be easily seen by the driver as a reminder that the tyre has been treated with the Tire Repair Kit. Drive carefully, particularly on bends. Do not exceed 80 km/h. Avoid sudden acceleration or braking.*
143) *You must always indicate that the tyre was repaired using the Tire Repair Kit. Give the booklet to the technicians who will be handling the tyre that was treated using the Tire Repair Kit.*
144) *Repairs are not possible in the case of damage to the wheel rim (bad groove distortion causing air loss). Do not remove foreign bodies (screws or nails) from the tyre.*
145) *Never operate the compressor for longer than 20 consecutive minutes. Risk of overheating. The Tire Repair Kit is not suitable for definitive repairs, so the repaired tyres may only be used temporarily.*
146) *As required by current regulations, the information on chemical substances for the protection of human health and the environment and on the safe use of the sealing fluid are on the packaging label. Compliance with the indications on the label is an essential condition to ensure the safety and the effectiveness of the product. Remember to carefully read the label before use; the user of the product is responsible for any damages caused by improper use. The sealing fluid has an expiry date. Replace the bottle if the sealant has expired.*
147) *If the pressure falls below 1.8 bar, do not drive any further: the Tire Repair Kit cannot guarantee proper seal because the tyre is too damaged. Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

148) *The Tire Repair Kit provide a temporary repair, therefore the tyre must be examined and repaired by a specialist as soon as possible. The sealant is suitable for use at temperatures in the range from −40°C to +50°C.*
149) *Indicate the presence of the stationary car in accordance with current regulations: hazard warning lights, warning triangle, etc. Those on board should get out of the vehicle and wait for the wheel to be repaired away from the threat posed by the traffic. If parked on a slope or rough surface, chock the wheels with wedges or other suitable devices (for the correct procedure for parking the car safely, refer to the "Parking" paragraph in the "Starting and driving" chapter).*

IMPORTANT

61) *In the event of a puncture caused by foreign bodies, the kit may be used to repair tyres showing damage on the tyre tread up to max. 6mm diameter.*

IMPORTANT

3) *Dispose of the bottle and the sealant liquid properly. Have them disposed of in compliance with national and local regulations.*

EMERGENCY STARTING

If the battery is flat, a jump starting can be performed using the battery and the cables of another vehicle, or using an auxiliary battery. In all cases, the battery used must have a capacity equal to or a little higher than the flat one.

Jump starting may be dangerous if carried out incorrectly: carefully follow the procedures described below.

62)

IMPORTANT NOTES

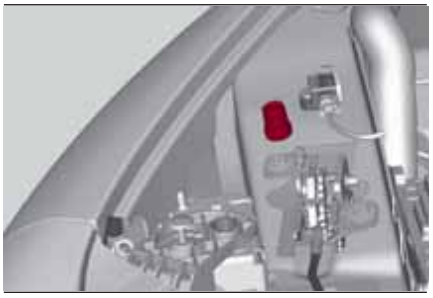
Do not use an auxiliary battery or any other source of external supply with a voltage above 12 V: the battery, the starter, the alternator and the electrical system of the vehicle could be damaged.

Do not attempt jump starting if the battery is frozen. The battery could break and explode!

REMOTE BATTERY CONNECTION POLES

To facilitate the operation, the remote poles of the battery for the jump starting can be found in the engine compartment: the battery, on the other hand, is placed in the luggage compartment.

The negative terminal (-) fig. 229 fig. 8 is positioned next to the right bonnet lock.



229 08076S0006EM

The positive pole (+) can be accessed by removing the cover fig. 230

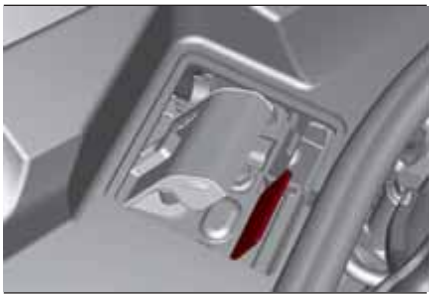
230 08076S0007EM

open protective flap fig. 231.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

231 08076S0002EM

The pole is shown in fig. 232.

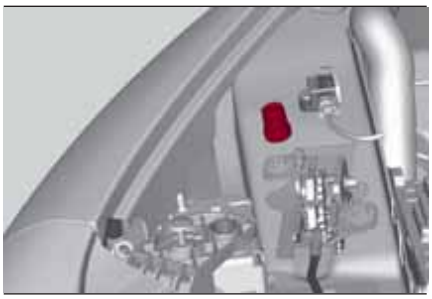


232 08076S0001EM

To carry out the operation, you need to have the correct cables to connect the auxiliary battery to the remote poles of the flat battery. Usually, these cables have terminals at the ends and are identified by different sheath colours (red = positive, black = negative).

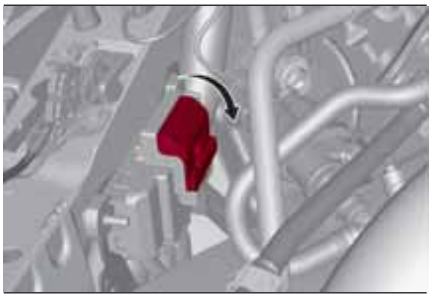
QV version

The negative terminal (-) fig. 233 fig. 8 is positioned next to the right bonnet lock.



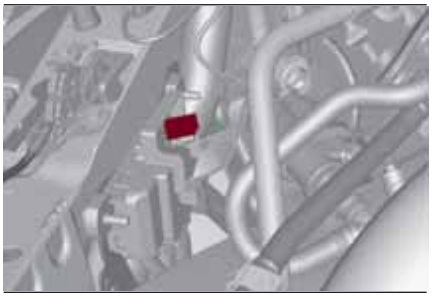
233 08076S0006EM

The positive terminal (+) can be reached by lifting the protective flap fig. 234



234 08076S0004EM

and is shown in fig. 235.



235 08076S0005EM

To carry out the operation, you need to have the correct cables to connect the auxiliary battery to the remote poles of the flat battery. Usually, these cables have terminals at the ends and are identified by different sheath colours (red = positive, black = negative).

JUMP STARTING

150) 151) 152)

Proceed as follows:

❒ switch off all electrical devices in the vehicle;

❒ engage the parking brake, move the lever to P (Park), for versions equipped with automatic transmission, or neutral, for versions with manual gearbox, then set the ignition device to STOP;

❒ should you be using the battery of another vehicle, park the other vehicle within the range of the cables used for the connection, operate the parking brake and ensure that its ignition is off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IMPORTANT If the auxiliary battery is installed on another vehicle, check that there is no accidental contact of metal parts between the two vehicles, since an earth connection may result, with the risk of serious injury to any people who may be nearby.

IMPORTANT If the procedure below is carried out incorrectly, it can cause severe injury to people or damage the recharging system of one or both vehicles. Carefully follow the instructions given below.

Cable connection

63)

Proceed as follows to carry out a jump starting:

❒ connect a terminal on the end of the positive cable from the remote positive pole (+) of the car with flat battery;

❒ connect the terminal on the opposite end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) pole of the auxiliary battery;

❒ connect a negative cable end terminal to the negative (-) pole of the auxiliary battery;

❒ connect the terminal on the opposite end of the negative (-) cable to the earth point (-) on the vehicle with the battery flat;

❒ start the engine of the car with an auxiliary battery, let it run for some minutes at idle and then start the engine of the car with flat battery. In case a portable battery is used, before starting the vehicle, wait a few seconds after completing the connection.

Cable disconnection

Once the engine is started, remove the connection cables in reverse sequence, as shown below:

❒ disconnect the negative cable end terminal (-) from the earth point (-) of the car with flat battery;

❒ disconnect the terminal on the opposite end of the negative cable from the negative (-) pole of the auxiliary battery;

❒ disconnect the terminal on the opposite end of the positive (+) cable from the positive (+) pole of the auxiliary battery;

❒ disconnect the terminal on the end of the positive cable from the remote positive pole (+) of the car with flat battery.

BUMP STARTING

Never, under any circumstances, jump start the engine by pushing, towing or coasting downhill.

IMPORTANT Any accessories (e.g. mobile phones, etc.) connected to the vehicle power sockets draw current even if they are not used. These devices, if left connected too much time with engine off, may cause the battery to drain with following reduction of its life and/or failure to start the engine.

WARNING

150) *Do not get too close to the radiator cooling fan: the electric fan may start; danger of injury. Scarves, ties and other loose clothing might be pulled by moving parts.*

151) *Remove any metal objects (e.g. rings, watches, bracelets), that might cause an accidental electrical contact and cause serious injury.*

152) *The batteries contain acid that can burn skin or eyes. Batteries produce hydrogen, which is easily flammable and explosive. Thus keep away flames or devices which may cause sparks.*

IMPORTANT

62) *Never use a fast battery-charger to start the engine as this could damage the electronic systems of your vehicle, particularly the ignition and engine fuel supply control units.*

63) *Do not connect the cable to the negative terminal (–) of the flat battery. The following spark could lead to battery explosion and cause serious harm. Only use the specific earth point; do not use any other exposed metallic part.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FUEL CUT-OFF SYSTEM

DESCRIPTION

Depending on the type and violence of the impact, the control unit of the ORC occupant protection systems determines whether to activate the airbags and the front seatbelt pretensioners and whether to immediately interrupt the current from the batteries to the supply pumps and to the devices that operate the engine. The power from the battery is interrupted by "skipping" the pyrotechnic fuse placed on the fuse box next to the positive pole of the battery.

When the fuse is "skipped", only some services, necessary for the safety of the vehicle (eg: door locks, anti-theft device, etc.), remain powered.

IMPORTANT After the impact, carefully check the vehicle for fuel leaks, for instance in the engine compartment, under the vehicle or near the tank area.

IMPORTANT Contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked.

EMERGENCY REFUELLING

The refuelling after an emergency is described in paragraph "Refuelling the vehicle", chapter "Starting and driving".

ENGINE OVERHEATING

Travelling on roads with a lot of traffic, frequent stops and engine restarts, and in the presence of exceptional climate conditions, phenomenons of engine overheating may present signalled by the switching on of the "Excessive engine coolant temperature" warning light on the instrument panel, along with a dedicated message (see the description in paragraph "Warning lights and messages" in the "Knowing the instrument panel" chapter).

IMPORTANT An overheated cooling system can damage the vehicle. In the case of overheating, pull over and stop the vehicle. Keep the engine at idling with air conditioning off until the temperature decreases. If temperature does not decrease, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.

Some further measures to overcome exceptional engine overheating are reported below:

❒ if the air conditioner is on, turn it off. The air conditioning system contributes to overheating of the engine cooling system;

❒ adjust passenger compartment heating to the maximum, by turning air distribution toward the floor or outside the vehicle, if external weather conditions allow for open side windows; then activate the fan at maximum speed. In this way the heater will operate as an

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

additional radiator, contributing to dissipate the heat from the engine cooling system.

IMPORTANT Coolant (antifreeze) exiting from the engine or vapour exiting from the radiator can cause serious burns. If vapour is seen or heard coming from the engine compartment, do not open the bonnet until the radiator has had enough time to cool down. Never try to remove the plug when the radiator is hot.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION GEAR LEVER UNLOCKING

(where provided)

153)

The manual release of the gear shift from position P (Parking) is meant to allow to push or tow the vehicle when this is impossible to do by using the gear lever normally.

This is a device especially dedicated to emergency situations, it is not meant for frequent use.

To disengage P (Park) proceed as follows:

❒ stop the engine;

❒ engage the electric parking brake;

❒ remove the rear cover from the central tunnel fig. 236;

236 08116S0001EM

❒ cut the adhesive tape that keeps the activation lace constrained to the release lever;

❒ pull the lace upwards to lift the end of the lever and release the gear shift from position P (Park): once it is released, the release lever will return to its initial position;

❒ wind the lace back and refit the rear tunnel cover correctly.

❒ disengage the parking brake only when the vehicle is firmly connected to a towing vehicle.

64)

WARNING

153) *Always engage the electric parking brake of the vehicle before manually unlocking the gear from P mode (Parking). If you perform this operation and the electric parking brake is not engaged, the vehicle may move suddenly and cause damage to people or things that lie in its path.*

IMPORTANT

64) *It is advisable to contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the refitting procedure carried out. If you would like to proceed autonomously, special attention must be paid to the correct coupling of the retaining clips. Otherwise, noise might be heard due to an incorrect fastening of the lower cover with the upper cover.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BROKEN-DOWN VEHICLE TOWING

This paragraph describes the conditions and methods to transport and tow a broken-down vehicle with a breakdown truck.

IMPORTANT The vehicle should be transported with all four wheels lifted from the ground on the platform of a roadside assistance vehicle. Avoid towing with only the front (or rear) wheels lifted. When towing with only the front (or rear) wheels lifted, in addition to damaging the body, it could damage the gearbox.

IMPORTANT To carry out the operation, the assistance vehicle must be equipped with an appropriate movement/lifting equipment to avoid damaging the vehicle. For loading on the towing vehicle, attach the tow equipment to the main structural components of the vehicle and not to the bumpers or other related brackets.

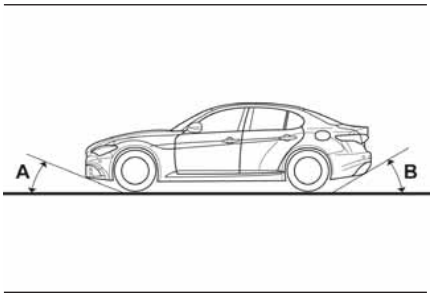
IMPORTANT Comply with the regulations regarding assistance and vehicle towing in force in each country.

IMPORTANT When the vehicle is secured on the platform of a breakdown truck, do not use the components of the front and rear suspension as fastening points. Towing in an incorrect manner may damage the vehicle.

The operators of the assistance vehicle must be informed with regard to the vehicle's minimum height from ground in order to avoid contact between the ends of the bumpers with the equipment of the breakdown truck.

fig. 237 illustrates the front and rear attachment corners of the vehicle, to be taken into consideration when loading the vehicle on the assistance vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



237 08126S0001EM

	RWD versions	AWD versions	Quadrifoglio version
A	12.880°	15.160°	12.045°
B	17.105°	18.400°	11.830°

REAR WHEEL DRIVE (RWD) VERSIONS

It is recommended to tow the vehicle with all four wheels lifted from the ground on the platform of a roadside assistance vehicle.

If a breakdown truck with platform is not available, the vehicle must be towed with the rear wheels LIFTED from the ground (using a trailer or special equipment allowing lifting of the rear wheels).

IMPORTANT Towing vehicles without complying with the above mentioned prescriptions can cause serious damage to the vehicle.

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE (AWD) VERSIONS

It is recommended to tow the vehicle with all four wheels lifted from the ground on the platform of a roadside assistance vehicle.

IMPORTANT Avoid lifting the front (or rear) wheels only, using a trailer or vehicle that allows lifting the wheels of one axle only. Lifting the front (or rear) wheels only while towing might damage the transmission or the transfer unit.

IMPORTANT If a vehicle is towed without complying with the above requirements, the transmission and/or the transfer unit might be seriously damaged. Damage due to incorrect towing is not covered by warranty.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TOWING THE VEHICLE

154) 155)

In order to be able to tow the vehicle, which has been in an accident or has broken down, on the road surface and only for short distances, a tow hook is provided in the tools container inside the boot.

Proceed as follows to use the tow hook:

❒ unhook the cap fig. 238 on the front or rear fender (where provided) fig. 238, pressing on the upper part;

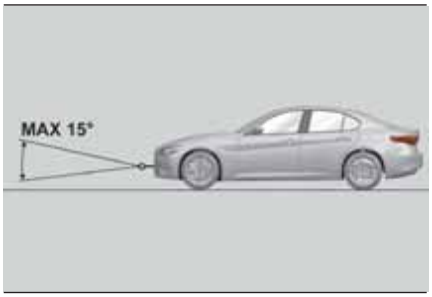
238 08136S0001EM

239 08136S0003EM

❒ take the tow hook from its housing in the boot and carefully clean the threaded housing on the vehicle before using it;

❒ tighten the vehicle's tow hook in its place for about 11 turns.

IMPORTANT The largest work angle of the cable to fix on the tow hook must not exceed 15°, as shown in fig. 240.



240 08136S0002EM

WARNING

154) *Move the ignition device to ON and then to STOP, without opening the door.*
155) *The brake servo and the electromechanical power steering will not work while the vehicle is being towed. You will therefore need to apply more force on the brake pedal and steering wheel. Do not use flexible ropes when towing, and avoid jerky movements. During towing, make sure that the trailer hitch does not damage any components it is touching. When towing the car, you must comply with all specific traffic regulations and adopt an appropriate driving behaviour. Do not start the engine while towing the car. Before tightening the ring, clean the threaded housing thoroughly. Make sure that the ring is fully screwed into the housing before towing the car.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This page is intentionally left blank

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Correct servicing permits the performance of the vehicle to be maintained over time, as well as limited running costs and safeguarding the efficiency of the safety systems. This chapter explains how.

SERVICING AND CARE

SCHEDULED SERVICING 208
ENGINE COMPARTMENT. 218
BATTERY RECHARGING 225
SERVICING PROCEDURES. 226
LIFTING THE VEHICLE 233
WHEELS AND TYRES 233
PROLONGED VEHICLE INACTIVITY 235
BODY. 236
INTERIOR 238

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SCHEDULED SERVICING

Correct servicing is crucial for guaranteeing a long life for the vehicle under the best conditions.

For this reason, Alfa Romeo has planned a series of checks and services at fixed distance intervals and, for versions/markets, where provided, at fixed time intervals, as described in the Scheduled Servicing Plan.

Before each service, it is always necessary to carefully follow the instructions in the Scheduled Servicing Plan (e.g. periodically check level of fluids, tyre pressure, etc.).

Scheduled Servicing is offered by an Alfa Romeo Dealership according to a set time schedule. If, during each operation, in addition to the ones scheduled, the need arises for further replacements or repairs, these may be carried out with the owner's explicit consent only.

IMPORTANT Scheduled Servicing Coupons are required by the Manufacturer. Failure to have them carried out may invalidate the warranty.

It is advisable to inform the Alfa Romeo Dealership of any small operating irregularities without waiting for the next service.

PERIODIC CHECKS

Every year or every **600** mi (1,000 km) or before long trips check and, if necessary, top up:

❒ engine coolant level;
❒ brake fluid level (if insufficient, see an Alfa Romeo dealership as soon as possible);
❒ windscreen washer fluid level;
❒ tyre inflation pressure and condition;
❒ operation of lighting system (headlights, direction indicators, hazard warning lights, etc.);
❒ operation of screen washing/wiping system and positioning/wear of wiper blades.

Every **1,800** mi (3,000 km), check and top up if required: engine oil level.

DEMANDING USE OF THE CAR

If the vehicle is used in one of the following conditions:

❒ dusty roads;
❒ short, repeated journeys (less than 7-8 km) at sub-zero outside temperatures;
❒ engine often idling or driving long distances at low speeds or long periods of inactivity;
❒ in the event of a long period of inactivity;

the following checks must be carried out more often than indicated in the Scheduled Service Plan:

❒ check front and rear disc brake pad condition and wear;
❒ check cleanliness of bonnet and boot locks, cleanliness and lubrication of linkage;
❒ visually inspect conditions of: engine, gearbox, transmission, pipes and hoses (exhaust/fuel system/brakes) and rubber elements (gaiters/sleeves/bushes, etc.);
❒ check battery charge and battery fluid level (electrolyte);
❒ visually inspect conditions of the accessory drive belts;
❒ check and, if necessary, change engine oil and replace oil filter;
❒ check and, if necessary, replace pollen filter;
❒ check and, if necessary, replace air cleaner;
❒ check and, if necessary, replace the Bad Fuel fuel filter (where available).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SCHEDULED SERVICING PROGRAMME (2.9 V6 engine)

The checks listed in the Scheduled Service Plan, after reaching 90,000 mi (150,000 km) /10 years, must be cyclically repeated starting from the first interval, thus following the same intervals as before.

Thousands of miles	9	18	27	36	45	54	63	72	81	90
Thousands of kilometres	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150
Years	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Check battery charge status with the proper instrument	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check tyre condition/wear and adjust pressure, if necessary. Check quick tyre repair kit recharge conditions/expiry date (if provided)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check operation of lighting system (headlights, direction indicators, hazard warning lights, boot, passenger compartment, glove compartment, instrument panel warning lights, etc.)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check and, if necessary, top up fluid levels (1)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check exhaust emissions/smokiness	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check the supply/engine control and emissions systems operation using the diagnosis equipment	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Visually inspect conditions of: exterior bodywork, underbody protection, pipes and hoses (exhaust, fuel system, brakes), rubber elements (gaiters, sleeves, bushes, etc.)		●		●		●		●		●
Check windscreen wiper blade position/wear	●		●		●		●		●	
Check operation of windscreen washer system and adjust jets if necessary	●		●		●		●		●	

(1) Always only use the liquids shown in the handbook for topping up after having checked that the system is not damaged.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Thousands of miles	9	18	27	36	45	54	63	72	81	90
Thousands of kilometres	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150
Years	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Check cleanliness of bonnet and luggage compartment locks, cleanliness and lubrication of linkage		●		●		●		●		●
Visually inspect conditions and wear of front disc brake pads and operation of pad wear indicators	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Visually inspect conditions and wear of rear disc brake pads and operation of pad wear indicators	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Visually inspect the condition and tensioning of the accessory drive belt(s)	●	●	●		●	●	●		●	●
Change engine oil and replace oil filter	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Spark plug replacement				●				●		
Replace accessory drive belt/s	(2)									
Replace air cleaner cartridge (3)		●		●		●		●		●
Change the brake fluid	(4)									
Replace supplementary fuel filter (where present)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Replace the passenger compartment cleaner (3)	O	●	O	●	O	●	O	●	O	●

(2) Areas that are not dusty: recommended maximum mileage 36,000 mi (60,000 km). The belt must be replaced every 4 years, regardless of distance travelled. Dusty areas and/or heavy conditions (cold climates, urban driving, long periods of idling): the recommended maximum distance is 18,000 mi (30,000 km). The belt must be replaced every 2 years, regardless of distance travelled.

(3) If the vehicle is used in dusty areas, this cleaner must be replaced every 9,000 mi (15,000 km).

(4) The brake fluid replacement has to be done every two years, irrespective of the mileage.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FOR VEHICLES EQUIPPED WITH CARBON CERAMIC BRAKE DISCS

Thousands of miles	9	18	27	36	45	54	63	72	81	90
Thousands of kilometres	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150
Years	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Brake disc wear status check with diagnostic tool	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Visually inspect the brake discs surface and edge	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Brake pads/brake discs replacement	(5)									

(5) The actual interval for changing the brake pads and the carbon ceramic brake discs depends on the vehicle usage conditions and is signalled by the warning light or message on the instrument panel. It is advisable to check the weight and thickness of the brake discs after any intensive use.

(o) Recommended operations

(●) Mandatory operations

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SERVICE SCHEDULE (2.0 T4 MAir petrol engine versions)

The checks listed in the Scheduled Service Plan, after reaching 90,000 mi (150,000 km)/10 years, must be cyclically repeated starting from the first interval, thus following the same intervals as before.

Thousands of miles	9	18	27	36	45	54	63	72	81	90
Thousands of kilometres	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150
Years	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Check battery charge status with the proper instrument	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check tyre condition/wear and adjust pressure, if necessary. Check quick tyre repair kit recharge conditions/expiry date (if provided)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check operation of lighting system (headlights, direction indicators, hazard warning lights, boot, passenger compartment, glove compartment, instrument panel warning lights, etc.)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check and, if necessary, top up fluid levels (1)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check exhaust emissions/smokiness	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check the supply/engine control and emissions systems operation using the diagnosis equipment	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check engine oil decay using the diagnosis equipment (2)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Visually inspect conditions of: exterior bodywork, underbody protection, pipes and hoses (exhaust, fuel system, brakes), rubber elements (gaiters, sleeves, bushes, etc.)		●		●		●		●		●
Check windscreen wiper blade position/wear	●		●		●		●		●	

(1) Always only use the liquids shown in the handbook for topping up after having checked that the system is not damaged.
(2) If the vehicle diagnostics shows that the oil quality is lower than 20%, changing the engine oil and filter is advised.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Thousands of miles	9	18	27	36	45	54	63	72	81	90
Thousands of kilometres	**15**	**30**	**45**	**60**	**75**	**90**	**105**	**120**	**135**	**150**
Years	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**10**
Check operation of windscreen washer system and adjust jets if necessary	●		●		●		●		●	
Check cleanliness of bonnet and luggage compartment locks, cleanliness and lubrication of linkage		●		●		●		●		●
Visually inspect conditions and wear of front disc brake pads and operation of pad wear indicators	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Visually inspect conditions and wear of rear disc brake pads and operation of pad wear indicators	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Visually inspect the condition and tensioning of the accessory drive belt(s)	●	●	●		●	●	●		●	●
Change engine oil and replace oil filter	(3)									
Replace Transfer Case oil (for AWD versions)								●		
Spark plug replacement				●				●		
Replace accessory drive belt/s	(4)									
Replace air cleaner cartridge (5)			●			●			●	
Replace supplementary fuel filter (where present)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

(3) The actual interval for changing engine oil and replacing the engine oil filter depends on the vehicle usage conditions and is signalled by the warning light or message in the instrument panel. Anyway, it must never exceed 1 year.

(4) Areas that are not dusty: recommended maximum mileage 36,000 mi (60,000 km). The belt must be replaced every 4 years, regardless of distance travelled. Dusty areas and/or heavy conditions (cold climates, urban driving, long periods of idling): the recommended maximum distance is 18,000 mi (30,000 km). The belt must be replaced every 2 years, regardless of distance travelled.

(5) If the vehicle is used in dusty areas, this cleaner must be replaced every 9,000 mi (15,000 km).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Thousands of miles	9	18	27	36	45	54	63	72	81	90
Thousands of kilometres	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150
Years	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Change the brake fluid	(6)									
Replace the passenger compartment cleaner (5)	o	●	o	●	o	●	o	●	o	●

(6) The brake fluid replacement has to be done every two years, irrespective of the mileage.
(5) If the vehicle is used in dusty areas, this cleaner must be replaced every 9,000 mi (15,000 km).
(o) Recommended operations
(●) Mandatory operations

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SCHEDULED SERVICING PLAN (2.2 JTD diesel engine versions)

The checks listed in the Scheduled Service Plan, after reaching 120,000 mi (200,000 km)/10 years, must be cyclically repeated starting from the first interval, thus following the same intervals as before.

Thousands of miles	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Thousands of kilometres	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
Years	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Check battery charge status with the proper instrument	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check tyre condition/wear and adjust pressure, if necessary. Check quick tyre repair kit recharge conditions/expiry date (where provided)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check operation of lighting system (headlights, direction indicators, hazard warning lights, boot, passenger compartment, glove compartment, instrument panel warning lights, etc.)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check and, if necessary, top up fluid levels (1)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Check exhaust emissions/smokiness	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Use the diagnosis socket to check supply/engine management systems operation, emissions and, for versions/markets, where provided, engine oil degradation (2)	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Visually inspect conditions of: exterior bodywork, underbody protection, pipes and hoses (exhaust, fuel system, brakes), rubber elements (gaiters, sleeves, bushes, etc.)	●		●		●		●		●	
Check windscreen wiper blade position/wear	●		●		●		●		●	

(1) Always only use the liquids shown in the handbook for topping up after having checked that the system is not damaged.
(2) If the vehicle diagnostics shows that the oil quality is lower than 20%, changing the engine oil and filter is advised.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Thousands of miles	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Thousands of kilometres	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
Years	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Check operation of windscreen washer system and adjust jets if necessary	●		●		●		●		●	
Check cleanliness of bonnet and luggage compartment locks, cleanliness and lubrication of linkage		●		●		●		●		●
Visually inspect conditions and wear of front disc brake pads and operation of pad wear indicators	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Visually inspect conditions and wear of rear disc brake pads and operation of pad wear indicators	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Visually inspect the condition and tensioning of the accessory drive belt(s)			●					●		
Visually inspect the toothed timing drive belt			●					●		
Change engine oil and replace oil filter	(3)									
Replace Transfer Case oil (for AWD versions)						●				
Replace engine oil centrifuge filter (blow-by)					●					●
Replace accessory drive belt/s	(4)									
Replace the toothed timing drive belt	(4)									

(3) The actual interval for changing engine oil and replacing the engine oil filter depends on the vehicle usage conditions and is signalled by the warning light or message in the instrument panel. In any case it must not exceed 2 years. If the car is used mainly for urban driving or fuel not strictly compliant with European Specifications EN590 is used, it is advisable to change the oil and replace the filter every year.

(4) Areas that are not dusty: recommended maximum mileage 60,000 mi (100,000 km). The belt must be replaced every 5 years, regardless of distance travelled. Dusty areas and/or heavy conditions (cold climates, urban driving, long periods of idling): the recommended maximum distance is 36,000 mi (60,000 km). The belt must be replaced every 3 years, regardless of distance travelled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Thousands of miles	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Thousands of kilometres	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
Years	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Replace air cleaner cartridge (5)			●			●			●	
Replace fuel filter cartridge (7)			●			●			●	
Change the brake fluid	(6)									
Replace the passenger compartment cleaner	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●

(5) If the vehicle is used in dusty areas, this cleaner must be replaced every 12,000 mi (20,000 km).
(7) If the vehicle runs on fuel with quality below the relevant European specification, this filter must be replaced every 12,000 mi (20,000 km).
(6) The brake fluid replacement has to be done every two years, irrespective of the mileage.
(●) Mandatory operations

ABC

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

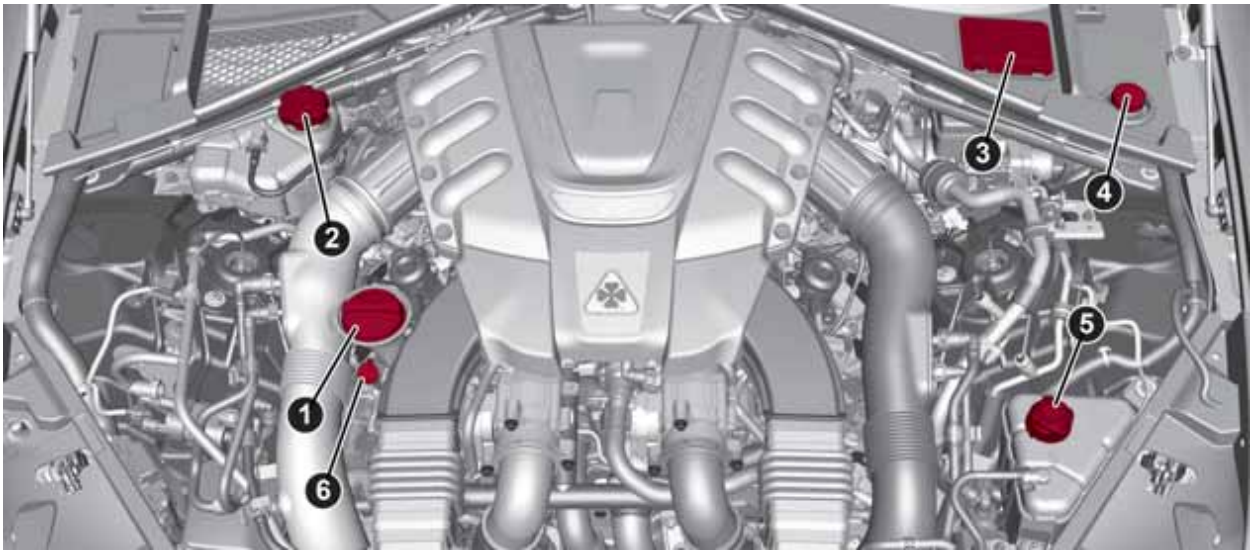
ENGINE COMPARTMENT

CHECKING LEVELS

156) 157)

65)

Quadrifoglio version - 2.9 V6 engine, fig. 241

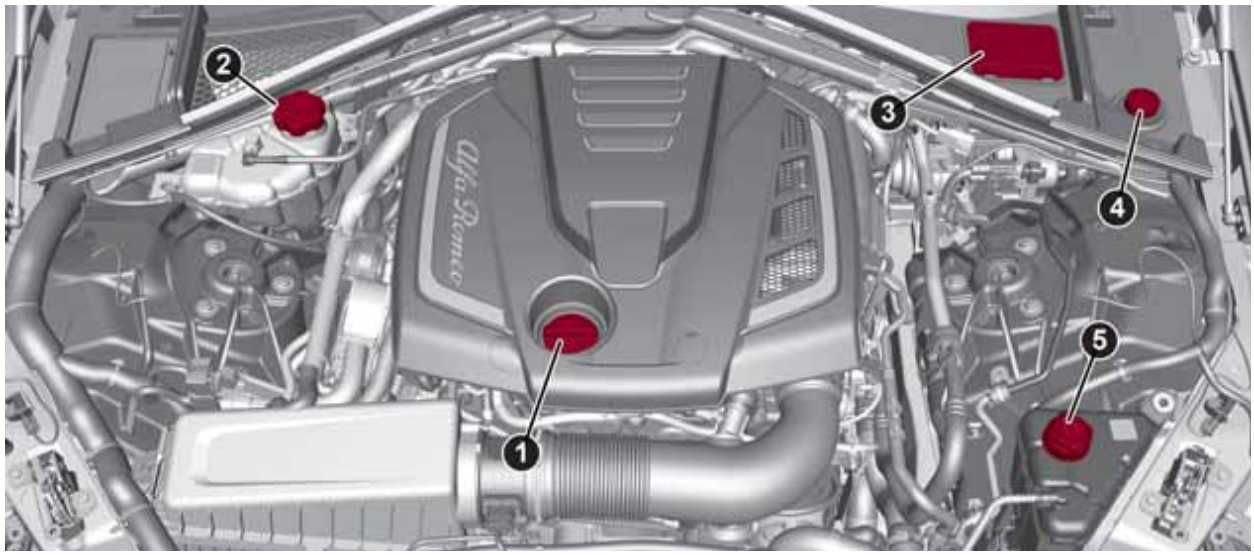


241 09026S0001EM

1. Engine oil filler 2. Primary engine cooling reservoir plug 3. Brake fluid reservoir plug access cover 4. Windscreen/headlights washer fluid reservoir plug 5. Secondary engine cooling reservoir plug 6. Engine oil dipstick

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Version - 2.0 T4 MAir engine, fig. 242

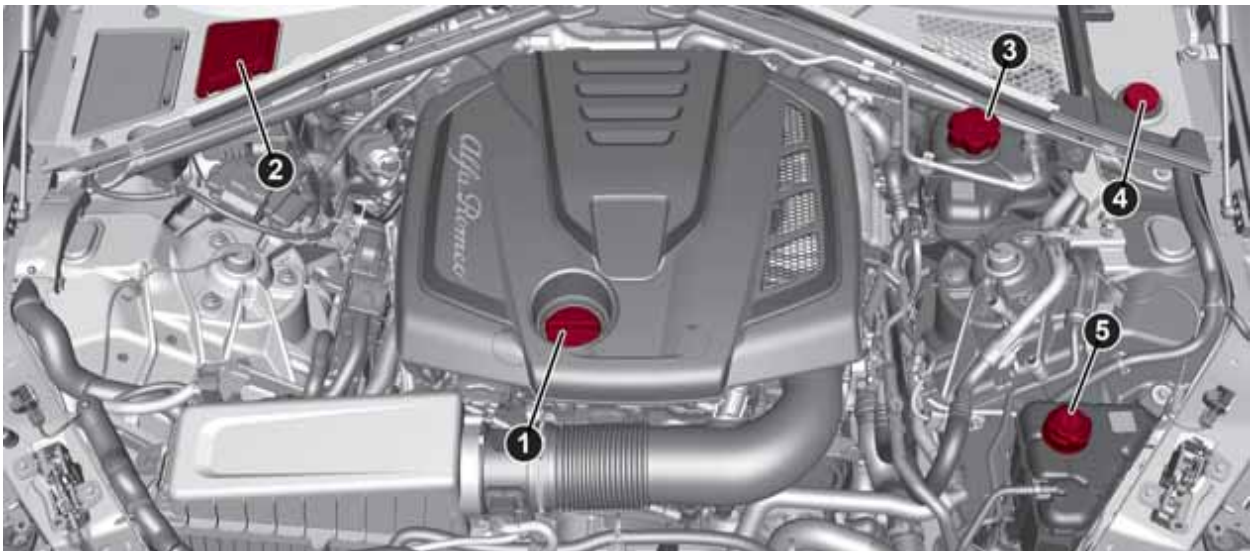


242 09026S0002EM

1. Engine oil filler 2. Primary engine cooling reservoir plug 3. Brake fluid reservoir plug access cover 4. Windscreen/headlights washer fluid reservoir plug 5. Secondary engine cooling reservoir plug

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Versions - 2.0 T4 MAir engine right-hand drive, fig. 243



243 09026S0006EM

1. Engine oil filler 2. Brake fluid reservoir plug access cover 3. Primary engine cooling reservoir plug 4. Windscreen/headlights washer fluid reservoir plug 5. Secondary engine cooling reservoir plug

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Diesel versions - 2.2 JTD engine, fig. 244

244 09026S0003EM

1. Engine oil filler 2. Engine coolant reservoir plug 3. Brake fluid reservoir plug access cover 4. Windscreen/headlights washer fluid reservoir plug

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE OIL

158)

66)

The engine oil level can be seen on the instrument panel display every time the engine is started, or on the Connect system display by activating on the main menu (MENU button) the following functions in sequence: "Apps"; "My Car" and "Oil Level".

Check on the display using the 6 notches that the oil level is between MIN and MAX level: 1 notch MIN level, 6 notches MAX level. If the oil level indication reaches the first red mark, add oil through the filler 1, considering that each notch shown on the display corresponds to approximately:

2.9 V6 Engine

❒ 250 ml

2.0 T4 MAir engine

❒ 250 ml

2.2 JTD engine

❒ 150 ml

67)

IMPORTANT Make sure not to add too much engine oil when topping up. Engine oil in excess may damage the engine. Have the car checked. Never exceed the MAX level when topping up engine oil. It is advisable to check the oil level in intermediate steps on the display. Use the oil dipstick on the Quadrifoglio version.

IMPORTANT The oil level is not refreshed immediately on the display after topping up. Consequently, wait for the oil level to be refreshed on the display following to procedure shown below.

Manual gearbox: checking oil level

2.9 V6 Engine

Check that the oil level is between the MIN and MAX marks on the dipstick 6 with the car on level ground. Take out the engine oil dipstick 6, clean it with a lint-free cloth and reinsert it. Extract the dipstick again and check that the level is between the MIN and MAX marks on it.

67)

IMPORTANT Make sure not to add too much engine oil when topping up. Engine oil in excess may damage the engine. Have the car checked. Never exceed the MAX level when topping up engine oil. It is advisable to check the oil level in intermediate steps using the oil dipstick.

IMPORTANT The oil level is not refreshed immediately on the display after topping up. Consequently, wait for the oil level to be refreshed on the display following to procedure shown below.

2.0 T4 MAir engine

Have this operation performed at an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

2.2 JTD engine

Have this operation performed at an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

IMPORTANT The dipstick in the engine compartment, on versions with 2.2 JTD engine only, is provided for use by workshop personnel only because of the risk of burns in case of use when the engine is hot.

Oil level indication update on display

If a top-up is needed, in order to ensure the correct indication of the oil level on the display, leave the car on flat ground with the engine running for approximately 5 minutes (temperature higher than 80°C) and proceed as shown below:

2.9 V6 and 2.2 JTD engines

❒ wait for 5 minutes, turn the ignition switch to ON without starting the engine and wait for a few seconds.

2.0 T4 MAir engine

❒ start the engine again and idle it for about 2 minutes.

IMPORTANT If the indication is not correct after the procedure, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

Engine oil consumption

68)

4)

The maximum engine oil consumption is usually 400 grams every 1000 km. When the car is new, the engine needs to be run in; therefore the engine oil consumption can only be considered stabilised after the first 5000 - 6000 km.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE COOLANT FLUID

159)

69)

If the level is too low, unscrew the reservoir cap and add the fluid described in the "Technical Specifications" chapter.

WASHER FLUID FOR WINDSCREEN/ HEADLIGHTS

160) 161)

The windscreen and headlights washer fluid reservoir (where available) is equipped with a telescopic filler.

If the level is too low, remove reservoir cap 4 and lift the filler then add the fluid described in the "Technical Specifications" chapter.

IMPORTANT With a low fluid level (indicated by the dedicated symbol appearing on the instrument panel display), the headlight washer system does not work, even though the screen washers continue to work.

BRAKE FLUID

Check that the fluid is at the max. level. If the liquid level in the tank is insufficient, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION ACTIVATION SYSTEM OIL

4)

The transmission control oil level should only be checked at an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

USEFUL ADVICE FOR EXTENDING THE LIFE OF YOUR BATTERY

Useful advice for extending the life of your battery

To avoid draining your battery and make it last longer, observe the following instructions:

❒ when you park the car, ensure that the doors, tailgate and bonnet are closed properly, to prevent any lights from remaining on inside the passenger's compartment;

❒ switch off all roof lights inside the car: the car is however equipped with a system which switches all internal lights off automatically;

❒ do not keep accessories (e.g. radio, hazard warning lights, etc.) switched on for a long time when the engine is not running;

❒ before performing any operation on the electrical system, disconnect the negative battery cable.

If, after purchasing the car, you wish to install electrical accessories which require permanent electrical supply (e.g. alarm, etc.) or accessories which influence the electrical supply requirements, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership, whose qualified staff will evaluate the overall electrical consumption.

IMPORTANT After the battery is disconnected, the steering must be initialised. The warning light on the instrument panel switches on to indicate this. To carry out this procedure, simply turn the steering wheel all the way from one end to the other and then put it back to the central position.

IMPORTANT If the charge level remains under 50% for a long time, the battery is damaged by sulphation, reducing its capacity and efficiency at start-up. The battery is also more prone to the risk of freezing (at temperatures as high as 14 °F (-10°C)).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BATTERY

162) 163) 164) 164) 165)

70)

6)

The battery does not require the electrolyte to be topped up with distilled water. A periodic check carried out at an Alfa Romeo Dealership is, however, necessary to check efficiency.

Follow the battery manufacturer's instructions for maintenance.

Replacing the battery

If necessary, replace the battery with another original battery with the same specifications. Follow the battery Manufacturer's instructions for maintenance.

IMPORTANT It will not be possible to open the boot with a key or by pressing the button in the passenger compartment when the battery is disconnected. So, always extract the manual boot opening strap before disconnecting the battery. The procedure is described in the "Prolonged vehicle inactivity" paragraph in this chapter.

WARNING

156) *Never smoke while working in the engine compartment: gas and inflammable vapours may be present, with the risk of fire.*

157) *Be very careful when working in the engine compartment when the engine is hot: you may get burned. Do not get too close to the radiator cooling fan: the electric fan may start; danger of injury. Scarves, ties and other loose clothing might be pulled by moving parts.*

158) *If the engine oil is being topped up, wait for the engine to cool down before loosening the filler cap, particularly for vehicles with aluminium cap (where provided). WARNING: risk of burns!*

159) *The cooling system is pressurised. If necessary, only replace the plug with another original or the operation of the system may be adversely affected. Do not remove the reservoir plug when the engine is hot: you risk scalding yourself.*

160) *Do not travel with the windscreen washer fluid reservoir empty: the windscreen washer is essential for improving visibility. Repeated operation of the system without fluid could damage or cause rapid deterioration of some system components.*

161) *Some commercial additives for windscreen washer fluid are flammable. The engine compartment contains hot components which may start a fire.*

162) *Battery fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with the skin and eyes. Keep open flames away from the battery and do not use objects that might create sparks: risk of explosion and fire.*

163) *Using the battery with insufficient fluid irreparably damages the battery and may cause an explosion.*

164) *If the vehicle must remain unused for a long time at a very low temperature, remove the battery and take it to a warm place, to avoid freezing.*

165) *When performing any operation on the battery or near it, always protect your eyes with special goggles.*

IMPORTANT

65) *Be careful not to confuse the various types of fluids while topping up: they are not compatible with each other! Topping up with an unsuitable fluid could severely damage your vehicle.*

66) *The oil level must never exceed the MAX reference.*

67) *If the MAX mark is exceeded (last notch on the right turns red) after the top-up, go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible to have the oil in excess removed.*

68) *Do not add oil with specifications other than those of the oil already in the engine.*

69) *Use a fluid of the same type as that already present in the reservoir for any topping up of the engine cooling system. The fluid cannot be mixed with other types of antifreeze fluids. In the event of topping up with an unsuitable product, under no circumstances start the engine and contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*

70) *When you need to disconnect or remove the battery, do not close the boot. In order to avoid possible accidental closure, it is recommended to place an obstacle (e.g. a cloth) on the lock that would physically avoid closure.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IMPORTANT

4) *Used engine oil and oil filters contain substances which are harmful to the environment. To change the oil and filters, we advise you to contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*
5) *Used transmission fluid contains substances that are harmful to the environment. You are advised to contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership for oil changes.*
6) *Batteries contain substances which are very dangerous for the environment. For battery replacement, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*

BATTERY RECHARGING

IMPORTANT NOTES

166) 167)

IMPORTANT Before using the charging device, always make sure that it is appropriate for the installed battery, with constant voltage (below 14.8 V) and low amperage (maximum 15 A).

IMPORTANT Recharge the battery in a well ventilated environment.

IMPORTANT Never charge or recharge a frozen battery: it may explode because of the nitrogen trapped inside the ice crystals.

IMPORTANT At all times while charging or recharging the battery, make sure that any sparks or open flames are kept sufficiently far away from the battery.

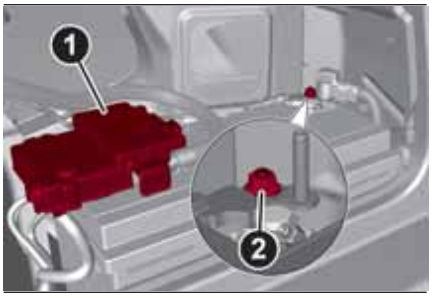
IMPORTANT Before using any devices to charge or to maintain the charge of the battery, carefully follow the instructions provided with the device in order to properly and safely connect it to the car battery.

You can recharge the battery without disconnecting the wires of the vehicle's electrical system.

❒ To reach the battery, remove the access panel inside the boot fig. 245;

245 09036S0001EM

❒ remove the protective cover 1 fig. 246 and connect the positive cable terminal of the charger (usually red) to the positive terminal (+) of the battery;
❒ connect the negative terminal of the charger (usually black) to nut 2 next to the negative terminal (-) of the battery, as shown in fig. 246;



246 09036S0002EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The vehicle is equipped with an IBS (Intelligent Battery Sensor), which is able to measure the charge and discharge voltage and calculate the charge level and the general condition of the battery. The sensor is placed next to the negative terminal (-) of the battery.

For a correct charge/discharge procedure, the charge voltage must go through the IBS sensor.

❒ Turn the charger on and follow the instructions on the user's manual to completely recharge the battery;

❒ when the battery is charged, turn the charger off before disconnecting it from the battery;

❒ first disconnect the black cable terminal of the battery charger and then the red cable terminal;

❒ refit the protective cover of the positive terminal of the battery and the access cover to the battery compartment.

IMPORTANT If a "quick-type" battery charger is used with the battery fitted on the vehicle, before connecting it disconnect both cables of the battery itself. Do not use a "quick-type" battery charger to provide the starting voltage.

IMPORTANT It will not be possible to open the boot with a key or by pressing the button in the passenger compartment when the battery is disconnected. So, always extract the manual boot opening strap before disconnecting the battery. The procedure is described in the "Prolonged vehicle inactivity" paragraph in this chapter.

71)

WARNING

166) *The process of charging or recharging the battery produces hydrogen, a flammable gas that can explode and cause serious injury.*
167) *When charging or recharging the battery, always follow the precautions listed.*

IMPORTANT

71) *When you need to disconnect or remove the battery, do not close the boot. In order to avoid possible accidental closure, it is recommended to place an obstacle (e.g. a cloth) on the lock that would physically avoid closure.*

SERVICING PROCEDURES

168) 169) 170)

72) 73) 74) 75) 76) 77) 78)

The following pages contain the rules on the **required** maintenance envisaged by the technical personnel who designed the vehicle.

In addition to these specific maintenance instructions specified for routine scheduled servicing, there are other components which may require intervention or replacements over the vehicle's life cycle.

ENGINE OIL

Engine oil level check

74)

To ensure correct engine lubrication, the oil must always be kept at the prescribed level (see "Engine compartment" in this chapter).

Check the oil level at regular intervals, for example every 1800 mi (3000 km).

It must be checked about 5 minutes after stopping the engine, once full operating temperature is reached. The vehicle must also be parked on as level a surface as possible.

Ensure that the oil level is within the interval on the dipstick between the minimum and maximum limits (Quadrifoglio version).

The engine oil level can be checked using the Connect system. To access the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

function, activate the main menu (MENU button) and select the following options in sequence: “Applications”; “My Car”; “Oil level”.

Changing the engine oil

See the "Scheduled servicing plan" for the correct servicing intervals.

Choice of engine oil type

To ensure optimal performance and maximum protection in all operating conditions, it is advisable to use solely ACEA-certified engine oils (see description in "Fluid and lubricants" in the "Technical specifications" chapter).

Additives for engine oil

It is strongly recommended not to use additives (other than leak detection dyes) with the engine oil.

The engine oil is a product designed specially for the vehicle and its performance may be deteriorated through the use of further additives.

Disposal of used engine oil and filters

For the disposal of the engine oil and filters, contact the appropriate body to determine local regulations.

IMPORTANT Used engine oil disposed of incorrectly may seriously harm the environment.

ENGINE OIL FILTER

Replacing the engine oil filter

The engine oil filter must be replaced each time the engine oil is changed. It is advisable to replace it with a genuine spare part, specifically designed for this vehicle.

AIR FILTER

168)

Replacing the air cleaner

See the "Scheduled servicing plan" for the correct servicing intervals. It is advisable to replace it with a genuine spare part, specifically designed for this vehicle.

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM MAINTENANCE

79) 80)

To ensure the best possible performance, the air conditioning system must be checked and undergo maintenance at an Alfa Romeo Dealership at the beginning of the summer.

IMPORTANT Do not use chemicals to clean the air conditioning system, since the internal components may be damaged. This kind of damage is not covered by warranty.

Replace the pollen filter

See the "Scheduled servicing plan" for the correct servicing intervals. For cleaner replacement, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

LUBRICATING MOVING PARTS OF THE BODYWORK

Ensure that the locks and bodywork junction points, including components such as the seat guides, door hinges (and rollers), boot and bonnet are periodically lubricated with lithium-based grease to ensure correct, silent operation and to protect them from rust and wear.

Thoroughly clean the components, eliminating every trace of dirt and dust. After lubricating, eliminate excess oil and grease. Also pay particular attention to the bonnet closing devices, to ensure correct operation. During operations on the bonnet, to be carried out with the engine cold, also remember to check, clean and lubricate the locking, release and safety devices.

Lubricate the external lock barrels twice a year. Apply a small amount of high-quality lubricant directly into the lock barrel.

If necessary, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WINDSCREEN WIPER

Periodically clean the windscreen and rear window and rubber profile of the windscreen wiper blades, using a sponge or a soft cloth and a non-abrasive detergent. This eliminates the salt or impurities accumulated when driving.

Prolonged operation of the windscreen window wipers with dry glass may cause the deterioration of the blades, in addition to abrasion of the surface of the glass. To eliminate the impurities on the dry glass, always operate the windscreen washers.

In the event of very low outdoor temperatures, below zero degrees, ensure that the movement of the rubber part in contact with the glass is not obstructed. Use a suitable deicing product to release it if required.

Avoid using the windscreen wipers to remove frost or ice.

Also avoid contact of the rubber profile of the blades with petroleum derivatives such as engine oil, petrol, etc.

IMPORTANT The envisaged life of the windscreen wiper blades varies according to the usage frequency. In any case, it is advisable to replace the blades approximately once a year. When the blades are worn, noise, marks on the glass or streaks of water may be noticed. In the presence of these conditions, clean the windscreen wiper blades or, if necessary, replace them.

IMPORTANT Driving with worn windscreen wiper blades is a serious hazard, because visibility is reduced in bad weather conditions.

Raising the windscreen wiper blades ("Service position" function)

The "Service position" function allows the driver to replace the windscreen wiper blades more easily. It is also recommended to activate this function when it is snowing and to make it easier to remove any dirt deposits in the area where the blades are normally positioned, when washing.

Activation of the function

To activate this function disable the windscreen wiper (ring nut fig. 247 in position **0**) before setting the ignition device to STOP.

This function can only be activated within 2 minutes of setting the ignition device to STOP.

To activate this function, move the lever upwards (unstable position) for at least three seconds.

247 09046S0001EM

Function deactivation

The function is deactivated if:

❒ wait for longer than 2 minutes before turning the ignition device to the STOP position, after having raised the lever fig. 247, and starting the Service procedure in this way;

❒ the ignition device is taken to position ON and the windscreen wiper control.

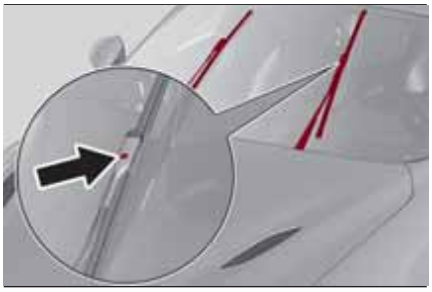
If, after using the function, the ignition device is set back to ON with the blades in a position other than rest position (at the base of the windscreen), they will only return to rest position following a command given using the stalk (stalk upwards, into unstable position) or when a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) is exceeded.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

Proceed as follows:

❒ raise the wiper arm, press tab fig. 248 of the attachment spring and remove the blade from the arm;

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



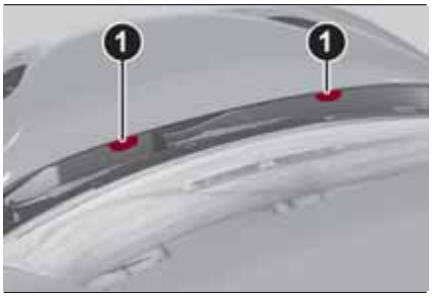
248 09046S0002EM

❒ fit the new blade, inserting the tab in the dedicated housing in the arm and checking that it is locked;
❒ lower the wiper arm onto the windscreen.

IMPORTANT Do not operate the windscreen wiper with the blades lifted from the windscreen.

Windscreen washer

The window washer nozzles fig. 249 are fixed. If there is no jet of fluid, firstly check that there is fluid in the reservoir (see paragraph "Engine compartment" in this chapter).



249 09046S0003EM

Then check that the nozzle holes are not clogged; use a needle to unblock them if necessary.

EXHAUST SYSTEM

169) 170) 75)

Adequate maintenance of the engine exhaust system represents the best protection against leaks of carbon monoxide into the passenger compartment.

If an unusual noise from the exhaust or the presence of smoke in the passenger compartment is identified, or if the underbody or rear section of the vehicle have been damaged, have the entire exhaust system and adjoining bodywork areas checked at an Alfa Romeo Dealership to identify any components which are broken, damaged, worn or have moved from their correct fitting position.

Open welding or loose connections may permit exhaust gas to enter the passenger compartment.

Have the exhaust system checked every time the vehicle is raised. Replace the components where necessary (for these operations, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership).

In normal operating conditions, the catalytic converter does not require maintenance. To ensure that it operates correctly, however, and prevent it from getting damaged, it is extremely important that the engine operates perfectly.

To minimise the risk of damaging the catalytic converter, proceed as follows:
❒ do not stop the engine or deactivate the ignition device with gear engaged and vehicle in motion;
❒ do not attempt to start the engine by bump starting;
❒ do not persist in using the vehicle if idling is very irregular or the operating conditions are very notably irregular.

COOLING SYSTEM

Coolant (antifreeze) exiting from the engine or vapour exiting from the radiator can cause serious burns.

If vapour is seen coming from the engine compartment, or its hissing is heard, do not open the bonnet until the radiator has cooled.

IMPORTANT Never attempt to remove the cap with radiator or expansion tank hot: DANGER OF SCALDING!

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine coolant check

Check the engine coolant level every 620 mi (1000 km) or before long journeys.

If there are impurities in the engine coolant, the system must be drained, flushed and refilled: contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

Check the front part of the condenser to check for any build-up of insects, leaves or other debris. Should it be dirty, clean it by spraying delicately with water.

Check the hoses of the engine cooling system to ensure that the rubber has not deteriorated and that there are no cracks, tears, cuts or obstructions in the expansion tank side and radiator side connectors. Should there be any doubt regarding leaks from the system (e.g. if frequent top ups are required), have the seal checked at an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

With the engine off and at normal operating temperature, check that the cooling system radiator cap is closed properly.

IMPORTANT DO NOT remove the cap if the fluid is boiling: DANGER OF SCALDING!

IMPORTANT Before removing the engine coolant reservoir cap, wait for the system to cool down.

Topping up / draining / flushing the engine coolant

If the engine coolant (antifreeze) is dirty, have cleaning and flushing carried out at an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

See the "Scheduled servicing plan" for the correct servicing intervals.

Important notes

❒ For topping up, use a fluid with the same characteristics as those indicated in the "Fluids and lubricants" table (see "Technical specifications" chapter).

❒ Do not use pure water, alcohol-based coolants, corrosions inhibitors or additional anti-rust products because they may be incompatible with the engine coolant and cause the clogging of the radiator. The use of propylene glycol-based coolant is also not recommended.

Engine cooling system cap

To prevent loss of engine coolant, make sure that the expansion tank cap is closed. If it is open, screw it completely until you reach/hear the click.

Periodically check the cap and clean it from any foreign bodies that may have deposited on the external surface.

Important notes

❒ Never add coolant with the engine hot or overheated.

❒ Do not attempt to cool an overheated engine by loosening or removing the cap. The heat causes a considerable increase in pressure in the cooling system.

❒ To prevent damage to the engine, only use the engine cooling circuit caps provided.

Disposal of used engine coolant

Disposal of engine coolant is subject to legal requirements: contact the appropriate body to determine local regulations.

Important notes

❒ To prevent the fluid from being ingested by children or animals, do not keep it in open containers or pour it on the ground. If ingested, contact a doctor immediately. Eliminate any traces of fluid from the ground immediately.

❒ When the vehicle stops after a short journey, vapour may be seen coming out from front of the bonnet. This is a normal phenomenon which is due to the presence of rain, snow or a lot of moisture on the surface of the radiator.

❒ With engine and system cold, do not top up with coolant beyond the maximum level indicated on the reservoir in the engine compartment.

BRAKING SYSTEM

The guarantee the efficiency of the braking system, periodically check its components: for this operation, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

See the "Scheduled servicing plan" for

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the correct servicing intervals.

IMPORTANT Driving with the pedal resting on the brake pedal may compromise its efficiency, increasing the risk of accidents. When driving, never keep your foot on the brake pedal and don't put unnecessary strain on it to prevent the brakes from overheating: excess pad wear may cause damage to the braking system.

Important notes

❒ When an insufficient oil level is detected, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership to have the system checked.

❒ Always keep the cap of the brake fluid reservoir (in the engine compartment) completely closed.

MANUAL GEARBOX

Use only a gearbox oil with the same characteristics as those indicated in the "Fluids and lubricants" table (see "Technical specifications" chapter).

Frequency of oil changes

In normal vehicle operating conditions, it is not necessary to change the gearbox oil, unless the lubricant comes into contact with water. In this case, for the oil change operation, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

76)

Use only a gearbox oil with the same characteristics as those indicated in the "Fluids and lubricants" table (see "Technical specifications" chapter).

Special additives

Do not use any type of additive with the automatic transmission oil. The automatic transmission oil is a product designed specially for this vehicle and its performance may be compromised through the use of further additives.

Avoid the use of transmission sealers, since they may compromise the efficiency of the automatic transmission seals.

IMPORTANT Do not use chemicals to flush the transmission, since this may damage its components.

Frequency of oil changes

In normal vehicle operating conditions, it is not necessary to change the transmission oil.

If fluid leaks are noticed or irregular operation of the transmission is detected, have it checked immediately at an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

IMPORTANT Driving the vehicle with an insufficient oil level may cause serious damage to the transmission.

REPLACING THE BATTERY

If necessary, replace the battery with another battery with the same specifications. It is advisable to contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership for replacement.

Follow the battery manufacturer's instructions for maintenance.

IMPORTANT It will not be possible to open the boot with a key or by pressing the button in the passenger compartment when the battery is disconnected. So, always extract the manual boot opening strap before disconnecting the battery. The procedure is described in the "Prolonged vehicle inactivity" paragraph in this chapter.

78)

WARNING

168) *The air intake system (air cleaner, rubber hoses, etc.) can be a protection in the case of blowbacks from the engine. DO NOT REMOVE this system unless you need to carry out repair or servicing operations. Before starting the engine, ensure that the system has not been removed: failure to observe this precaution may result in serious injury.*

169) *Exhaust emissions are very dangerous, and may be lethal. They contain carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless gas which can cause fainting and poisoning if inhaled.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

170) *The exhaust system may reach high temperatures and may cause a fire if the vehicle is parked on flammable material. Dry grass or leaves can also catch fire if they come into contact with the exhaust system. Do not park or use the vehicle in a place in which the exhaust system might come into contact with flammable material.*

IMPORTANT

72) *Incorrect servicing of the vehicle or failure to carry out operations or repairs (when necessary) may lead to more expensive repairs, damage to other components or have a negative impact on the vehicle performance. Have any malfunction inspected immediately by an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*
73) *The vehicle is equipped with fluids which are optimised or protecting its performance and life and extending service intervals. Do not use chemicals for washing these components since they may damage the engine, the gearbox or the climate control system. This damage is not covered by the vehicle's warranty. If any component needs to be washed due to malfunctioning, use only the specific liquid for that procedure.*
74) *An excessive or insufficient amount of oil inside the base is extremely damaging to the engine. Make sure it is always at an adequate level.*

75) *Vehicles equipped with catalytic converter must be fuelled only with unleaded petrol. Leaded petrol would permanently damage the catalytic converter and eliminate its ability to reduce polluting emissions, seriously compromising the engine performance, which would be irreparably damaged. If the engine does not work correctly, especially if it starts irregularly or if there is a reduction of its performance, immediately go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership. Prolonged and faulty operation of the engine may cause overheating of the converter and, as a consequence, possible damage to the converter and the vehicle.*
76) *Using a gearbox fluid different from that approved may compromise gearshifting quality and/or cause vibration of the gearbox itself.*
77) *It is recommended to have the vehicle serviced by an Alfa Romeo Dealership. When carrying out normal periodic operations and small servicing interventions personally on the vehicle, it is recommended to use suitable equipment, genuine spare parts and the necessary fluids. Do not carry out any interventions if you don't have the necessary experience.*
78) *When you need to disconnect or remove the battery, do not close the boot. In order to avoid possible accidental closure, it is recommended to place an obstacle (e.g. a cloth) on the lock that would physically avoid closure.*

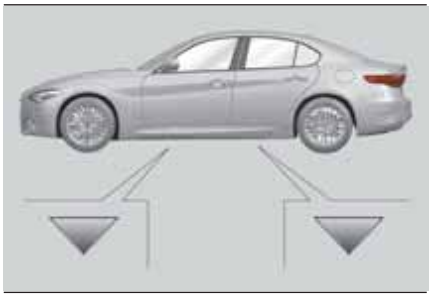
79) *Always require the use of only compressor coolants and lubricants approved and suitable for the specific air conditioning system fitted on the vehicle. Some non-approved coolants are flammable and may explode, with the risk of injuries. The use of non-approved coolants or lubricants may adversely affect system efficiency, leading to expensive repairs.*
80) *The air conditioner system contains coolant under high pressure: to avoid injuries to people or damage to the system, any coolant addition or repair that requires to disconnect the cables must be carried out by an Alfa Romeo Dealership.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

LIFTING THE VEHICLE

If the car needs to be jacked up, go to an Alfa Romeo Dealership which is equipped with shop jacks or jack arms.

The vehicle lifting points are marked on the side skirts with the ▽ symbols (see illustration in fig. 250).



250 09056S0001EM

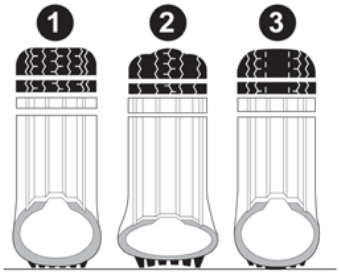
WHEELS AND TYRES

SAFETY INFORMATION

Before embarking on a long trip, and every two weeks, check the tyre inflation pressure. Check the tyres when cold.

It is normal for the pressure to increase when the vehicle is used due to tyre heating; for the correct tyre inflation pressure, see the "Rims and Tyres" paragraph in the "Technical specifications" chapter.

Incorrect pressure causes abnormal tyre wear fig. 251:



251 09066S0001EM

1 - *normal pressure*: tread evenly worn;

2 - *low pressure*: tread particularly worn at the edges;

3 - *high pressure*: tread particularly worn in the centre.

The tyres must be replaced when the tread reaches the minimum thickness reference on the tyres themselves.

GENERAL INFORMATION

171) 172) 173)

Take the following precautions to prevent damage to the tyres:

❒ avoid braking suddenly, racing starts and violent impact against the curb, potholes or other obstacles and driving for extended periods on uneven road surfaces;

❒ periodically check that the tyres have no cuts in the side wall, abnormal swelling or irregular tread wear;

❒ avoid travelling with the vehicle overloaded. If a tyre is punctured, stop immediately and change it;

❒ every 6000/9000 miles (10000/15000 kilometres) switch the tyres, keeping them on the same side of the vehicle in order not to change the rotation direction (if the tyres are the "one-way" type). Tyres with unidirectional tread can be recognised by arrows on the side of the tyre which indicate the direction of rotation. It is compulsory to comply with this direction. Only in this way can the tyres maintain their characteristics in terms of grip, noise, resistance to wear and drainage on wet surfaces;

❒ tyres age even if they are not used much. Cracks in the tread and on the sidewalls are a sign of ageing. In any event, have the tyres checked by

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

specialised personnel if they have been fitted for longer than 6 years;

❒ in the case of replacement, always fit new tyres, avoiding those of unknown origin.

RIMS AND TYRES

For the type of wheel rims and tyres fitted on the vehicle see the "Rims and Tyres" paragraph in the "Technical data" chapter.

SNOW CHAINS

81)

Rear Wheel Drive and All-wheel drive versions

0.28 in (7-mm) snow chains can be used on all tyres. For tyres up to 8.86 in (225 mm) in width (205/60R16, 225/55R16, 225/50R17, 225/45R18), it is also possible to install 0.35 in (9 mm) chains.

We recommend using snow chains available from the Alfa Romeo Dealership.

Quadrifoglio version

It is possible to put chains on the rear 265/35R19 tyre (winter tyre size). Avoid using traditional chains as they can damage the braking system if not installed correctly, thereby compromising the car's safety.

We strongly advise using zero-clearance chains and to use equipment proposed by the Dedicated Alfa Romeo Dealership.

Important notes

The use of snow chains should be in compliance with local regulations of each country. In certain countries, tyres marked with code M+S (Mud and Snow) are considered as winter equipment; therefore their use is equivalent to that of the snow chains.

The snow chains may be applied only to the rear wheel tyres.

Check the tension of the snow chains after the first few metres have been driven.

IMPORTANT Using snow chains with tyres with non-original dimensions may damage the vehicle.

IMPORTANT Using different size or type (M+S, snow, etc.) tyres between front and rear axle may adversely affect vehicle driveability, with the risk of losing control of the vehicle and resulting accidents.

SUGGESTIONS ABOUT THE ROTATION OF THE TYRES

The front and rear tyres are subject to different loads and stress due to steering, manoeuvres and braking. For this reason they are subject to uneven wear.

To prevent this problem, the tyres should be rotated at the appropriate time (10000 / 15000 km). Inverting the tyres means moving them to different positions on the same side of the car (front to back and vice versa).

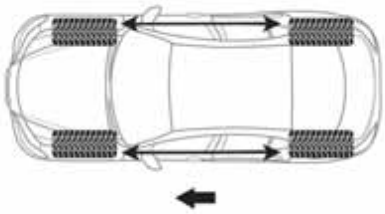
IMPORTANT Crossing the tyres is not advised, so placing a tyre on a different axle on the other side of the car is impossible.

IMPORTANT On cars equipped with differentiated tyres (tyre size different between front and rear axles, ex. QV version) rotation of any of the tyres is not advised.

Tyre rotation contributes to the preservation of the grip and traction performance on wet, muddy or snowy roads, guaranteeing optimal driveability of the vehicle.

In the case of irregular wear of the tyres identify the cause and correct it as soon as possible, by contacting an Alfa Romeo Dealership.

The suggested method for inverting the tyres is shown in fig. 252 (the arrow indicates the vehicle's travel direction).



252 09066S0002EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

All Wheel Drive (AWD) versions

It is recommended to avoid situations with a large difference in wear between the front and rear tyres and to strictly use winter tyres of the sizes given in the "Rims and tyres provided" table.

The AWD systems and the original tyres were developed together to ensure the vehicle's best performance. When changing the tyres, it is therefore recommended to use the same "AR" marked tyres, to maintain the same level of performance and component life.

WARNING

171) *The road holding qualities of the car also depend on the correct inflation pressure of the tyres.*
172) *If tyre pressure is too low, it may overheat and be severely damaged as a result.*
173) *Never submit alloy rims to repainting treatments requiring the use of temperatures exceeding 150°C. The mechanical properties of the wheels could be impaired.*

IMPORTANT

81) *Keep your speed down when snow chains are fitted; do not exceed 50 km/h (or the equivalent in miles). Avoid potholes, do not drive over steps or sidewalks and do not drive long distances over roads without snow, to avoid damaging both your vehicle and the road surface.*

PROLONGED VEHICLE INACTIVITY

If the vehicle is left inactive for longer than a month, the following precautions should be observed:

❒ park the car in covered, dry and if possible well-ventilated premises and slightly open the windows;
❒ check that the electric parking brake is not activated;
❒ carry out the procedure: "Manual boot opening device" procedure described in this paragraph;
❒ disconnect the negative battery terminal and check the battery charge. Repeat this check once every three months during storage;
❒ if the battery is not disconnected from the electrical system, check its state of charge every thirty days;
❒ clean and protect the painted parts using protective wax;
❒ clean and protect the shiny metal parts using special compounds available commercially;
❒ sprinkle talcum powder on the windscreen wiper rubber blades and lift them off the glass;
❒ cover the vehicle with a fabric or perforated plastic sheet, paying particular care not to damage the painted surface by dragging any dust that may have accumulated on it. Do not use compact plastic sheets which do not

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

allow humidity to evaporate from the surface of the vehicle;
❒ inflate tyres to +0.5 bar (+7.3 psi) above the standard prescribed pressure and check it periodically;
❒ do not drain the engine cooling system;
❒ any time the car is left inactive for two weeks or more, operate the air conditioning system with engine idling for at least 5 minutes, setting external air and with fan set to maximum speed. This operation will ensure appropriate lubrication for the system, thus minimising the possibility of damage to the compressor when the system is operated again.
IMPORTANT After setting the ignition device to STOP and having closed the driver side door, wait at least one minute before disconnecting the electrical supply from the battery. When reconnecting the electrical supply to the battery, make sure that the ignition device is in the STOP position and the driver side door is closed.

Manual boot opening device

Proceed as follows if the battery needs to be disconnected:
❒ from the boot interior covering, rotate the plug to the left of the lock and extract the strap connected to it fig. 253;
❒ make sure the free end of the strap remains outside the boot when closing the boot.

253 0908650001EM

The boot can now be opened manually by pulling the strap leftwards.

This procedure must be carried out exclusively in safe places because it allows to open the boot unconditionally.

BODY

PROTECTION AGAINST ATMOSPHERIC AGENTS

The car is equipped with the best available technological solutions to protect the bodywork against corrosion. These include:
❒ painting products and systems which give the vehicle resistance to corrosion and abrasion
❒ use of galvanised (or pre-treated) steel sheets, with high resistance to corrosion;
❒ spraying of plastic parts, with a protective function in the more exposed points: underdoor, inner wing, edges, etc.;
❒ use of "open" boxed sections to prevent condensation and pockets of moisture which could favour the formation of rust inside;
❒ use of special films to protect against abrasion in exposed areas (e.g. rear wing, doors, etc.).

BODY AND UNDERBODY WARRANTY

Your vehicle is covered by warranty against perforation due to rust of any original element of the structure or bodywork. For the general terms of this warranty, refer to the Warranty Booklet.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PRESERVING THE BODYWORK

Paint

82) 7)

Touch up abrasions and scratches immediately to prevent the formation of rust.

Maintenance of paintwork consists of washing the car: the frequency depends on the conditions and environment where the car is used. For example, it is advisable to wash the vehicle more often in areas with high levels of atmospheric pollution or salted roads.

Some parts of the vehicle may be covered with a matt paint which, in order to be maintained intact, requires special care: see the instructions in the warning at the end of this paragraph

83)

To correctly wash the vehicle, follow these instructions:

❒ if high pressure jets or cleaners are used to wash the vehicle, keep a distance of at least 15 in (40 cm) from the bodywork to avoid damage or alteration. Build up of water could cause damage to the vehicle in the long term;

❒ to make it easier to remove any dirt deposits in the area where the blades are normally located it is recommended to position the windscreen wipers vertically (service position), for more information consult the "Maintenance procedures" paragraph in this chapter;

❒ wash the bodywork using a low pressure jet of water if possible;

❒ wipe a sponge with a slightly soapy solution over the bodywork, frequently rinsing the sponge;

❒ rinse well with water and dry with a jet of air or a chamois leather.

Dry the less visible parts (e.g. door frames, bonnet, headlight frames, etc.) with special care, as water may stagnate more easily in these areas. Do not wash the car after it has been left in the sun or with the bonnet hot: this may alter the shine of the paintwork.

Exterior plastic parts must be cleaned in the same way as the rest of the vehicle.

If you want to wash a car with automatic transmission in a car wash that moves it, you must do the following:

❒ make sure that the car is on a flat surface and that automatic engagement of the parking brake when the engine is switched off is disabled (for how to disable it, refer to the "Electric parking brake" section in the "Starting and driving" chapter);

❒ with the car stationary, the gear in N (Neutral) and the brake pedal up: press the start button.The car will remain in N (Neutral) for 15 minutes, after which P (Park) mode will be activated.

Avoid parking under trees; the resin dropped by trees makes the paintwork go opaque and increases the possibility of corrosion.

Windows

Use specific detergents and clean cloths to prevent scratching or altering the transparency.

IMPORTANT Wipe the rear window inside gently with a cloth following the direction of the filaments to avoid damaging the heating device.

Front headlights

Use a soft cloth soaked in water and detergent for washing cars.

IMPORTANT Never use aromatic substances (e.g. petrol) or ketones (e.g. acetone) for cleaning the plastic lenses of the headlights.

IMPORTANT When cleaning with a pressure washer, keep the water jet at least 8 in (20 cm) away from the headlights.

Engine compartment

At the end of every winter, wash the engine compartment thoroughly, taking care not to aim the jet of water directly at the electronic control units or at the windscreen wiper motors. Have this operation performed at a specialised workshop.

IMPORTANT The washing should take place with the engine cold and the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ignition device in the STOP position. After the washing operation, make sure that the various protections (e.g. rubber caps and guards) have not been removed or damaged.

IMPORTANT

82) *In order to preserve the aesthetic appearance of the paint abrasive products and/or polishes should not be used for cleaning the vehicle.*
83) *Avoid washing with rollers and/or brushes in washing stations. Wash the vehicle only by hand using neutral pH detergents; dry it with a wet chamois leather. Abrasive products and/or polishes should not be used for cleaning the car. Bird droppings must be washed off immediately and thoroughly as the acid they contain is particularly aggressive. Avoid (if at all possible) parking the vehicle under trees; remove vegetable resins immediately as, when dried, it may only be possible to remove them with abrasive products and/or polishes, which is highly inadvisable as they could alter the typical opaqueness of the paint. Do not use pure windscreen washer fluid for cleaning the front windscreen and rear window; dilute it min. 50% with water. Only use pure screen washer fluid when strictly necessary due to outside temperature conditions.*

IMPORTANT

7) *Detergents pollute the environment. Only wash your vehicle in areas equipped to collect and treat wastewater from this type of activity.*

INTERIOR

174) 175) 176)

Periodically check the cleanliness of the interior, beneath the mats, which could cause oxidation of the sheet metal.

SEATS AND FABRIC PARTS

Remove dust with a soft brush or a vacuum cleaner. It is advisable to use a moist brush on velvet upholstery. Rub the seats with a sponge moistened with a solution of water and neutral detergent.

LEATHER SEATS

(where provided)

Remove the dry dirt with a chamois or slightly damp cloth, without exerting too much pressure.

Remove any liquid or grease stains using an absorbent dry cloth, without rubbing. Then clean with a soft cloth or buckskin cloth dampened with water and mild soap. If the stain persists, use specific products and observe the instructions carefully.

IMPORTANT Never use alcohol. Make sure that the cleaning products used contain no alcohol or alcohol derivatives, even in small quantities.

PLASTIC AND COATED PARTS

84)

Clean interior plastic parts with a damp cloth (if possible made from microfibre), and a solution of water and neutral, non-abrasive detergent.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To clean oily or persistent stains, use specific products free from solvents and designed to maintain the original appearance and colour of the components.

Remove any dust using a microfibre cloth, if necessary moistened with water. The use of paper tissues is not recommended as these may leave residues.

GENUINE LEATHER PARTS

(where provided)

Use only water and mild soap to clean these parts. Never use alcohol or alcohol-based products.

Before using a specific product for cleaning interiors, make sure that it does not contain alcohol and/or alcohol based substances.

CARBON FIBRE PARTS

To eliminate small scratches and marks on the carbon, contact an Alfa Romeo Dealership Authorized Point. An improperly performed operation may irreparably damage the carbon.

WARNING

174) *Never use flammable products, such as petrol ether or rectified petrol to clean the inside of the car. The electrostatic charges which are generated by rubbing during the cleaning operation may cause a fire.*

175) *Do not keep aerosol cans in the car: they might explode. Aerosol cans must not be exposed to a temperature exceeding 50°C. When the vehicle is exposed to sunlight, the internal temperature can greatly exceed this value.*

176) *There must be no obstacles on the floor underneath the pedals; make sure that mats are always flat and do not interfere with the pedals.*

177) *Do not use aggressive organic substance such as: gasoline, kerosene, oil, acetone or solvents.*

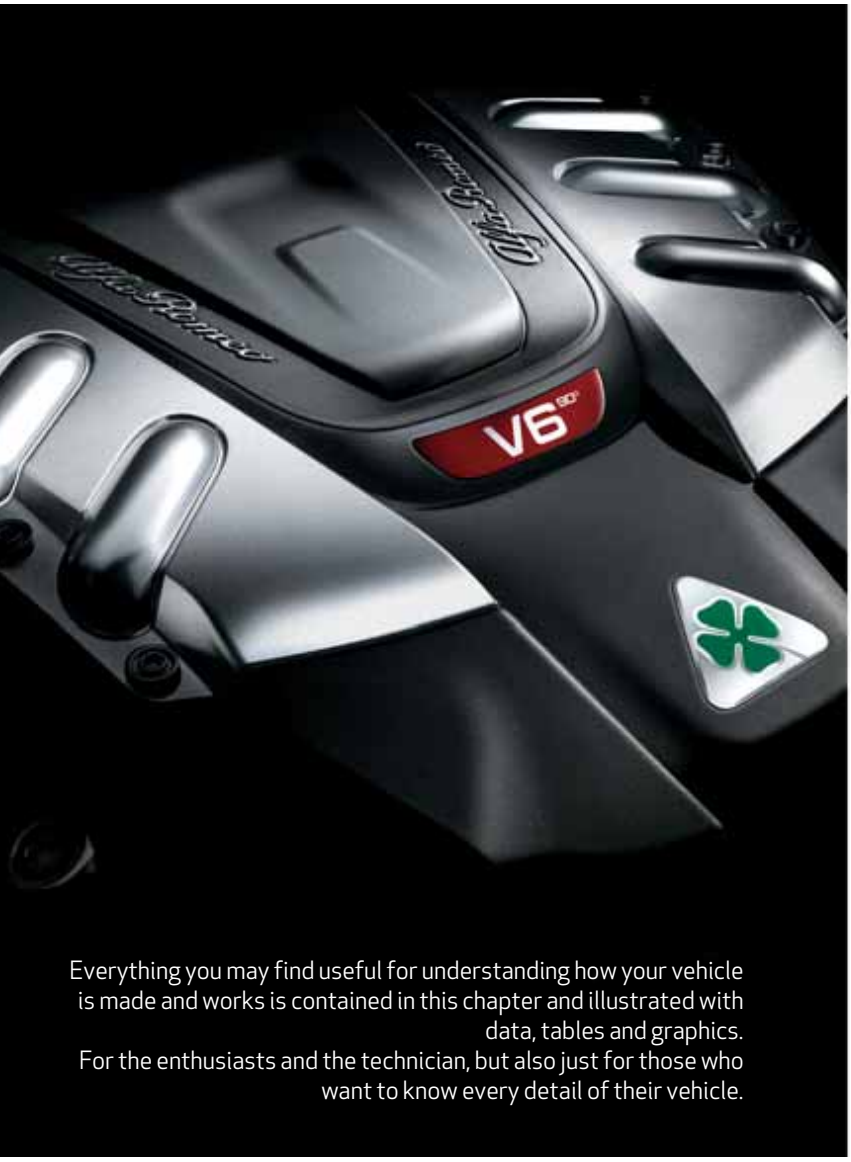
IMPORTANT

84) *Never use alcohol, petrols and derivatives to clean the dashboard and instrument panel lens.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This page is intentionally left blank

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Everything you may find useful for understanding how your vehicle is made and works is contained in this chapter and illustrated with data, tables and graphics.
For the enthusiasts and the technician, but also just for those who want to know every detail of their vehicle.

TECHNICAL DATA

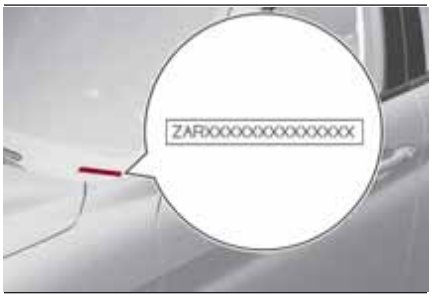
IDENTIFICATION DATA 242
ENGINE CODES - BODYWORK VERSIONS 243
ENGINE 244
FUEL 247
TRANSMISSION 248
BRAKES 249
SUSPENSION. 250
STEERING. 251
RIMS AND TYRES 252
DIMENSIONS. 257
WEIGHTS 259
REFUELLING 261
FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS. 263
PERFORMANCE 266
FUEL CONSUMPTION. 267
CO2 EMISSIONS 269
PRESCRIPTIONS FOR HANDLING THE VEHICLE AT THE END OF ITS LIFE. 270
OFFICIAL TYPE APPROVALS 271

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

IDENTIFICATION DATA

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is stamped on a plate on the front left corner of the dashboard cover fig. 254, which can be seen from outside the vehicle, through the windscreen.



254 10016S0001EM

This number is also printed on the chassis at the front left shock absorber and can be seen by opening the bonnet fig. 255.

255 10016S0002EM

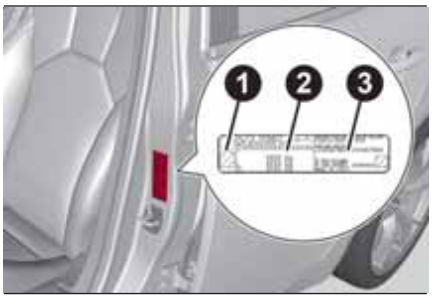
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN) PLATE

The plate is located on the left side front door pillar fig. 256 and shows the data about:

❒ 1: correct value of smoke coefficient (for Diesel engines);

❒ 2: name of the manufacturer, vehicle type-approval number, vehicle identification number, max. permitted weights;

❒ 3: engine identification, type variant version, spare part number, colour code, additional information.



256 10016S0003EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE CODES - BODYWORK VERSIONS

PETROL VERSIONS

Versions	Engine code	Bodywork versions
2.9 V6	670050436	952AAM24
2.0 T4 Mair 280 HP	55273835	952ACA45
2.0 T4 Mair 200 HP	55273835	952ABA25B

DIESEL VERSIONS

Versions	Engine code	Bodywork versions
2.2 JTD 210 HP A.T.	55268818	952AHA45
2.2 JTD 180 HP A.T. LOW CO_2	55271040	952ALA25
2.2 JTD 180 HP A.T.(*)	55268532	952AFA25
2.2 JTD 180 HP M.T.	55266388	952AFM25
2.2 JTD 150 HP M.T.(*)	55266388	952AEM250
2.2 JTD 150 HP M.T.	55266388	952AEM25
2.2 JTD 150 HP A.T.(*)	55268532	952AEA250
2.2 JTD 150 HP A.T.	55268532	952AEA25
2.2 JTD 136 HP M.T.(*)	55266388	952AGM250
2.2 JTD 136 HP M.T.	55266388	952AGM25
2.2 JTD 136 HP A.T.(*)	55268532	952AGA250
2.2 JTD 136 HP A.T.	55268532	952AGA25

(*) For versions/markets, where specified

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGINE

2.9 V6 Engine	
Cycle	Otto
Number and position of cylinders	6 a V
Piston bore and stroke (mm)	86.5 × 82
Total displacement (cm³)	2891
Compression ratio	9.3:1
Maximum power (ECE) (kW)	375
Maximum power (ECE) (HP)	510
Corresponding engine speed (rpm)	6500
Maximum torque (ECE) (Nm)	600
Maximum torque (ECE) (kgm)	61
Corresponding engine speed (rpm)	2500
Fuel	Unleaded petrol 95 R.O.N. (EN228 specifications)(*)

(*) To comply with all emission limits while simultaneously guaranteeing minimal consumption and maximum performance, use premium-quality unleaded petrol with octane rating (RON) of 98 or higher.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2.0 T4 MAir engine	200 HP	280 HP
Cycle	Otto	Otto
Number and position of cylinders	4 in line	4 in line
Piston bore and stroke (mm)	84 / 90	84 / 90
Total displacement (cm³)	1995	1995
Compression ratio	10 ± 0.4	10 ± 0.4
Maximum power (ECE) (kW)	147	206
Maximum power (ECE) (HP)	200	280
Corresponding engine speed (rpm)	4500	5250
Maximum torque (ECE) (Nm)	330	400
Maximum torque (ECE) (kgm)	33.7	40.8
Corresponding engine speed (rpm)	1750	2250
Fuel	Unleaded petrol 95 R.O.N. (EN 228 specifications)	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2.2 JTD engine	136 HP	150 HP	180 HP	210 HP
Cycle	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Number and position of cylinders	4 in line	4 in line	4 in line	4 in line
Piston bore and stroke (mm)	83 / 99	83 / 99	83 / 99	83 / 99
Total displacement (cm³)	2143	2143	2143	2143
Compression ratio	15.5 ± 0.4	15.5 ± 0.4	15.5 ± 0.4	15.5 ± 0.4
Maximum power (ECE) (kW)	100	110	132	154
Maximum power (ECE) (HP)	136	150	180	210
Corresponding engine speed (rpm)	4000	4250	3750	3750
Maximum torque (ECE) (Nm) manual transmission	380	380	380	–
Maximum torque (ECE) (kgm) manual transmission	38.75	38.75	38.75	–
Corresponding engine speed (rpm)	1500	1500	1500	–
Maximum torque (ECE) (Nm) automatic transmission	450	450	450	470
Maximum torque (ECE) (kgm) automatic transmission	45.89	45.89	45.89	47.9
Corresponding engine speed (rpm)	1750	1750	1750	1750
Fuel	Diesel for motor vehicles (EN590 Specification)			

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FUEL

178)

	Power supply
2.9 V6 Engine	Phased sequential electronic injection with knock control and variable intake valve actuation
2.0 T4 MAir engine	Electronic timed sequential injection with knock control
2.2 JTD engine	Direct injection with electronically-controlled MultiJet Common Rail system, with intercooler

WARNING

178) *Modifications or repairs to the supply system that are not carried out correctly or do not take the system technical specifications into account can cause malfunctions leading to the risk of fire.*

ABC

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TRANSMISSION

Version	Transmission	Traction
2.9 V6 Engine	Six forward gears plus reverse with synchronisers for forward gears and reverse or Eight forward gears plus reverse with synchronisers for forward gears and reverse	Rear
2.0 T4 MAir engine	Six forward gears plus reverse with synchronisers for forward gears and reverse or Eight forward gears plus reverse with synchronisers for forward gears and reverse	Rear or All-wheel drive
2.2 JTD engine	Six forward gears plus reverse with synchronisers for forward gears and reverse or Eight forward gears plus reverse with synchronisers for forward gears and reverse	Rear or All-wheel drive

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BRAKES

Version	Front brakes	Rear brakes	Parking brake
2.9 V6 Engine	Disc or Carbon Ceramic disc	Disc or Carbon Ceramic disc	Electric
2.0 T4 MAir engine	Disc	Disc	Electric
2.2 JTD engine	Disc	Disc	Electric

IMPORTANT Water, ice and salt spread on the roads may deposit on the brake discs, reducing braking efficiency the first time the brakes are applied.

IMPORTANT To obtain the maximum efficiency of the braking system, a bedding-in period of about 500 km is needed: during this period it is better to avoid sharp, repeated and prolonged braking.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SUSPENSION

Version	Front	Rear
2.9 V6 Engine	Independent wheel double-wishbone suspension	Independent wheel with multilink system
2.0 T4 MAir engine	Independent wheel double-wishbone suspension	Independent wheel with multilink system
2.2 JTD engine	Independent wheel double-wishbone suspension	Independent wheel with multilink system

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

STEERING

Version	Kerb-to-kerb turning circle (in - m)	Type
2.9 V6 Engine	445 in (11.30 m)	Rack and pinion with electric power steering
2.0 T4 MAir engine	425 in (10.80 m)	Rack and pinion with electric power steering
2.2 JTD engine	425 in (10.80 m)	Rack and pinion with electric power steering

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RIMS AND TYRES

Alloy rims. Tubeless radial carcass tyres.

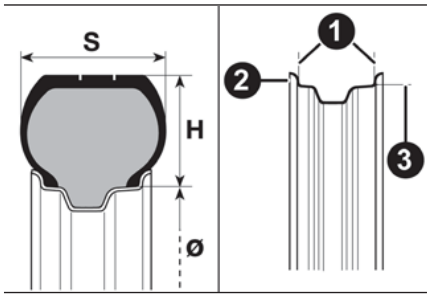
All approved tyres are listed in the Registration Document.

IMPORTANT If there are any discrepancies between the Owner Handbook and the Registration Document, take the information from the latter. For safe driving, the car must be fitted with tyres of the same make and type on all wheels.

IMPORTANT Do not use air chambers with tubeless tyres.

CORRECT READING OF THE TYRE

Example fig. 257: 215/65 R16 98H



257 10096S0001EM

215 Rated width (S, distance in mm between the sides)

65 Height/width ratio (H/S) as a percentage

R Radial tyre

16 Rim diameter in inches (Ø)

98 Load index (capacity)

H Maximum speed index

Maximum speed index

Q up to 160 km/h

R up to 170 km/h

S up to 180 km/h

T up to 190 km/h

U up to 200 km/h

H up to 210 km/h

V up to 240 km/h

W up to 270 km/h

Y up to 300 km/h

Maximum speed index for snow tyres

QM + S up to 160 km/h

TM + S up to 190 km/h

HM + S up to 210 km/h

Load index (capacity)	
60 = 250 kg	**80** = 450 kg
61 = 257 kg	**81** = 462 kg
62 = 265 kg	**82** = 475 kg
63 = 272 kg	**83** = 487 kg
64 = 280 kg	**84** = 500 kg
65 = 290 kg	**85** = 515 kg
66 = 300 kg	**86** = 530 kg
67 = 307 kg	**87** = 545 kg
68 = 315 kg	**88** = 560 kg
69 = 325 kg	**89** = 580 kg
70 = 335 kg	**90** = 600 kg
71 = 345 kg	**91** = 615 kg
72 = 355 kg	**92** = 630 kg
73 = 365 kg	**93** = 650 kg
74 = 375 kg	**94** = 670 kg
75 = 387 kg	**95** = 690 kg

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Load index (capacity)	
76 = 400 kg	**96** = 710 kg
77 = 412 kg	**97** = 730 kg
78 = 425 kg	**98** = 750 kg
79 = 437 kg	

CORRECT READING OF THE RIM CODE

Example fig. 257: 7J x 17 H2 ET 40

7 rim width in inches (1).

J rim drop centre outline (side projection where the tyre bead rests) (2).

17 rim fitting diameter in inches (corresponds to the diameter of the tyre to be mounted) (3 = Ø).

H2 shape and number of humps (circumference measurement which keeps the bead of tubeless tyres in position on the rim).

ET 40 wheel compensation (distance between the disc/rim support plane and the wheel rim centre line).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

RIMS AND TYRES PROVIDED

179)

Version	Wheels	Tyres
2.9 V6 Engine	FRONT 19x8.5J REAR 19x10J	FRONT 245/35 ZR19 (93Y) XL REAR 285/30 ZR19 (98Y) XL
2.0 T4 MAir engine **2.2 JTD engine**	16x7J	205/60 R16 92V 225/55 R16 95W
	17x7.5J	225/50 R17 94W
	18x8J	225/45 R18 91W
	FRONT 18x8J(*) REAR 18x9J(*)	FRONT 225/45 R18 91W(*) REAR 255/40 R18 95W(*)
	19x8J	225/40 R19 89W
	FRONT 19x8J(+) REAR 19x9J(+)	FRONT 225/40 R19 89W(+) REAR 255/35 R19 92W(+)

(*) Matching rims/tyres
(+) Matching rims/tyres

NOTE In partnership with Pirelli, Alfa Romeo has developed a range of winter tyres specially for the Alfa Romeo Giulia. They can be identified by the "AR" mark. The "AR" tyres ensure the best vehicle performance and safety. They are available in the following sizes:

2.9 V6 Engine: 245/35 R19 93V XL and 285/30 R19 98V XL

2.0 T4 MAir e 2.2 JTD Engines: 205/60 R16 96H, 225/50 R17 94H and 225/45 R18 91H

Check the vehicle registration document for which sizes can be installed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

COLD TYRE INFLATION PRESSURE

When the tires are warm, the inflation pressure should be + 0.3 bar (4.4 psi) in relation to the recommended figure. However, recheck that the value is correct with the tyre cold.

If it is necessary to raise the vehicle, refer to the "Raising the vehicle" paragraph in the "In an emergency" chapter.

2.9 V6 Engine

Tyres	Unladen/medium load		Full load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
245/35 R19	2.4 bar (34.8 psi)(*)	—	2.9 bar (42.2 psi)(*)	—
265/35 R19	—	2.2 bar (31.9 psi)	—	2.9 bar (42.2 psi)
285/30 R19	—	2.2 bar (31.9 psi) (*)	—	2.9 bar (42.2 psi) (*)

(*) Pressures suitable for all types of tyres (summer and winter)

2.0 T4 MAir and 2.2 JTD engines

Tyres	Unladen/medium load		Full load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
205/60 R16	2.7 bar (39.2 psi)(*)	2.9 bar (42.2 psi)(*)	2.7 bar (39.2 psi) (*)	2.9 bar (42.2 psi) (*)
225/55 R16	2.2 bar (31.9 psi)	2.4 bar (34.8 psi)	2.7 bar (39.2 psi)	3.0 bar (43.5 psi)
225/50 R17	2.2 bar (31.9 psi) (*)	2.4 bar (34.8 psi) (*)	2.7 bar (39.2 psi) (*)	3.0 bar (43.5 psi) (*)
225/45 R18	2.2 bar (31.9 psi) (*)	2.4 bar (34.8 psi) (*)	2.7 bar (39.2 psi) (*)	3.0 bar (43.5 psi) (*)
225/45 R18	2.0 bar (29 psi)	—	2.4 bar (34.8 psi)	—
255/40 R18	—	2.2 bar (31.9 psi)	—	2.6 bar (37.7 psi)
225/40 R19	2.4 bar (34.8 psi)	2.6 bar (37.7 psi)	2.7 bar (39.2 psi)	3.0 bar (43.5 psi)
225/40 R19	2.4 bar (34.8 psi)	—	2.7 bar (39.2 psi)	—
255/35 R19	—	2.3 (33.4 psi)	—	2.9 bar (42.2 psi)

(*) Pressures suitable for all types of tyres (summer and winter)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

SNOW CHAINS

85)

Rear Wheel Drive and All-wheel drive versions

7-mm snow chains can be used on all tyres. For tyres up to 225 mm in width (205/60R16, 225/55R16, 225/50R17, 225/45R18), it is also possible to install 9 mm chains.

We recommend using snow chains available from the Alfa Romeo Dealership.

Quadrifoglio version

It is possible to put chains on the rear 265/35R19 tyre (winter tyre size). Avoid using traditional chains as they can damage the braking system if not installed correctly, thereby compromising the car's safety.

We strongly advise using zero-clearance chains and to use equipment proposed by the Dedicated Alfa Romeo Dealership.

Important notes

The use of snow chains should be in compliance with local regulations of each country. In certain countries, tyres marked with code M+S (Mud and Snow) are considered as winter equipment; therefore their use is equivalent to that of the snow chains.

The snow chains may be applied only to the rear wheel tyres.

Check the tension of the snow chains after the first few metres have been driven.

IMPORTANT Using snow chains with tyres with non-original dimensions may damage the vehicle.

IMPORTANT Using different size or type (M+S, snow, etc.) tyres between front and rear axle may adversely affect vehicle driveability, with the risk of losing control of the vehicle and resulting accidents.

WARNING

179) *If winter tyres with a lower speed rating than that indicated in the Registration Document are used, do not exceed the maximum speed corresponding to the speed rating of the tyres used.*

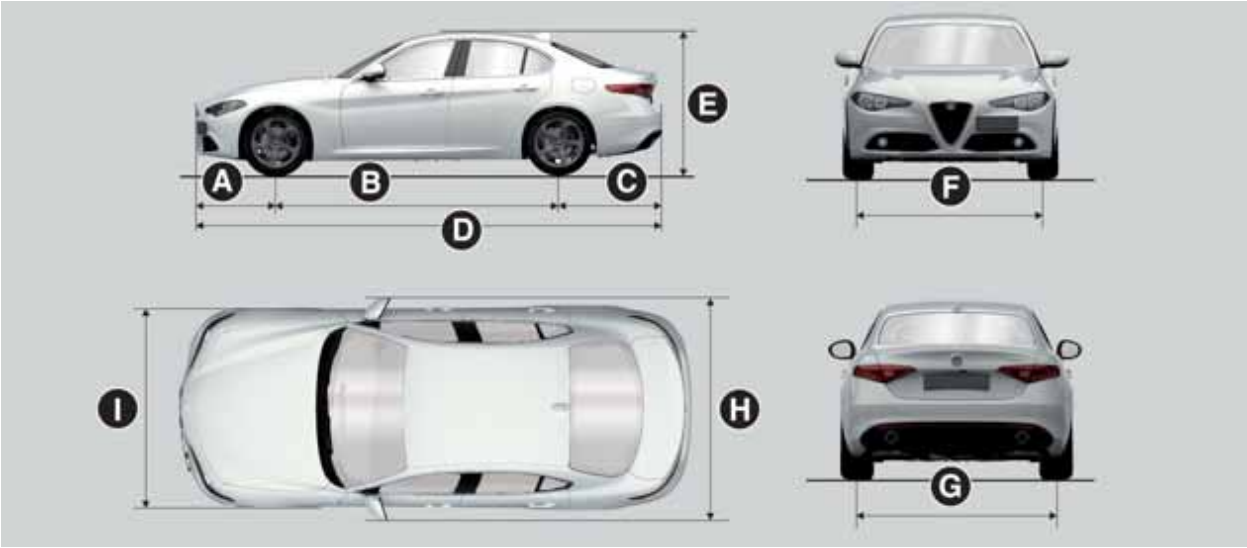
IMPORTANT

85) *Keep your speed down when snow chains are fitted; do not exceed 50 km/h. Avoid potholes, do not drive over steps or sidewalks and do not drive long distances over roads without snow, to avoid damaging both your vehicle and the road surface.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DIMENSIONS

Dimensions are expressed in inches/millimeters and refer to the vehicle equipped with its standard-supplied tyres. Height is measured with vehicle unladen, fig. 258.



258 10106S0001EM

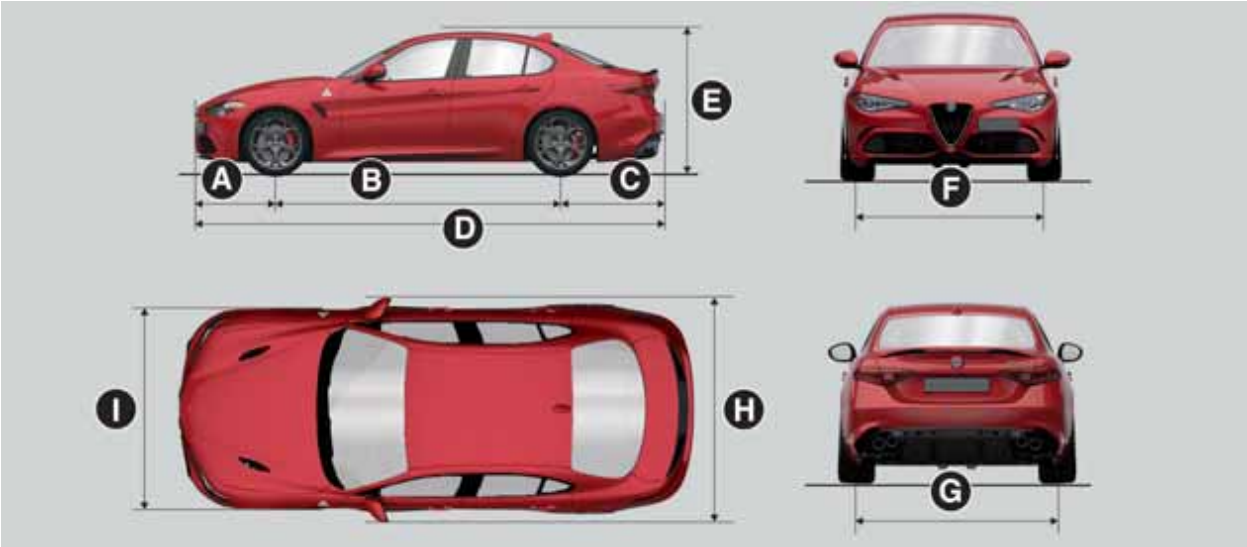
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
31.3 / 795	111 / 2,820	40.5 / 1,028	182.8 / 4,643	56.5 / 1,436(+) 57 / 1,450(*)	61.3 / 1,557(+) 61.4 / 1,559(*)	64 / 1,625(+) 63.1 / 1,604(*)	79.7 / 2,024	73.2 / 1,860

(+) RWD versions
(*) AWD versions
Small variations with respect to the reported values are possible depending on the dimensions of the rims.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

QUADRIFOGLIO VERSION

Dimensions are expressed in inches/millimeters and refer to the vehicle equipped with its standard-supplied tyres. Height is measured with vehicle unladen, fig. 259.



259 10106S0002EM

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
31.3 / 795	111 / 2,820	40.3 / 1,024	182.6 / 4,639	56.1 / 1,426	61.2 / 1,555	63.3 / 1,607	79.7 / 2,024	73.7 / 1,873

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT VOLUME

Capacity (V.D.A. standards)

Rear seats not folded

Vehicle unladen: 105 UK gal (480 litres)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

WEIGHTS

Weights (lb / kg)	2.9 V6 Engine		2.0 T4 MAir engine		2.2 JTD engine				
	M.T.(°)	A.T.(°°)	A.T.(°°) 200 HP	A.T.(°°) 280 HP	M.T.(°)	MT(°) (+)	A.T.(°°)	A.T.(°°) LOW CO_2	AT(°°) 210 HP
Unladen weight (with all fluids, fuel tank filled to 90% and without optional equipment)	3,483 lb (1,580 kg)	3,571 lb (1,620 kg)	3,150 lb (1,429 kg)	3,373 lb (1,530 kg)	3,029 lb (1,374 kg)	3,086 lb (1,400 kg)	3,186 lb (1,445 kg)	3,230 lb (1,465 kg)	3,384 lb (1,535 kg)
Payload including the driver (*)	1,146 lb (520 kg)	1,168 lb (530 kg)	1,270 lb (576 kg)	1,268 lb (575 kg)	1,248 lb (566 kg)	1,190 lb (540 kg)	1,268 lb (575 kg)	1,224 lb (555 kg)	1,268 lb (575 kg)
Maximum permitted loads (**)									
– front axle	2,161 lb (980 kg)	2,227 lb (1,010 kg)	2,028 lb (920 kg)	2,205 lb (1,000 kg)	1,962 lb (890 kg)	1,962 lb (890 kg)	2,072 lb (940 kg)	2,083 lb (945 kg)	2,238 lb (1,015 kg)
– rear axle	2,624 lb (1,190 kg)	2,668 lb (1,210 kg)	2,535 lb (1,150 kg)	2,557 lb (1,160 kg)	2,458 lb (1,115 kg)	2,458 lb (1,115 kg)	2,524 lb (1,145 kg)	2,535 lb (1,150 kg)	2,557 lb (1,160 kg)
– total	4,630 lb (2,100 kg)	4,740 lb (2,150 kg)	4,420 lb (2,005 kg)	4,641 (2,105 kg)	4,277 lb (1,940 kg)	4,277 lb (1,940 kg)	4,453 lb (2,020 kg)	4,453 lb (2,020 kg)	4,652 lb (2,110 kg)
Towable loads									
– braked trailer	–	–	3,527 lb (1,600 kg)	3,527 lb (1,600 kg)	3,527 lb (1,600 kg)	3,527 lb (1,600 kg)	3,527 lb (1,600 kg)	3,527 lb (1,600 kg)	3,527 lb (1,600 kg)
– trailer without brakes	–	–	1,642 lb (745 kg)	1,642 lb (745 kg)	1,596 lb (724 kg)	1,596 lb (724 kg)	1,642 lb (745 kg)	1,642 lb (745 kg)	1,642 lb (745 kg)

(°) Manual transmission
(°°) Automatic transmission
(+) Version for specific markets
(*) If special equipment is fitted (trailer towing equipment, etc.) the empty weight will increase and consequently the payload will decrease in relation to the maximum permitted loads.
(**) Loads not to be exceeded. The user is responsible for arranging goods in the luggage compartment and/or on the load platform within the maximum permitted loads.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Weights (lb / kg)	2.9 V6 Engine		2.0 T4 MAir engine		2.2 JTD engine				
Maximum load on roof	–	–	110 lb (50 kg)	110 lb (50 kg)	110 lb (50 kg)	110 lb (50 kg)	110 lb (50 kg)	110 lb (50 kg)	110 lb (50 kg)
Maximum load on tow hitch (trailer with brakes)	–	–	141 lb (64 kg)	141 lb (64 kg)	141 lb (64 kg)	141 lb (64 kg)	141 lb (64 kg)	141 lb (64 kg)	141 lb (64 kg)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

REFUELLING

	2.9 V6 Engine	2.0 T4 MAir engine	2.2 JTD engine
Fuel tank (UK gal/litres)	12.76 UK gal (58 lt)	12.76 UK gal (58 lt)	11.4 UK gal (52 lt)
including a reserve of (UK gal/litres)	1.98 UK gal (9 lt)	1.98 UK gal (9 lt)	1.76 UK gal (8 lt)
Primary cooling system, versions with manual transmission (UK gal/litres)	2.46 UK gal (11.2 lt) 2.31 UK gal (10.5 lt) (right-hand drive version)	1.89 UK gal (8.6 lt)	1.72 UK gal (8.7 lt)
Primary cooling system, versions with automatic transmission (UK gal/litres)	2.46 UK gal (11.2 lt)	1.89 UK gal (8.6 lt)	2.07 UK gal (9.4 lt) 1.96 UK gal (8.9 lt)(*)
Secondary cooling system (UK gal/litres)	1.21 UK gal (5.5 lt)	0.95 UK gal (4.3 lt)	1.12 UK gal (5.1 lt)(*)
Engine sump and filter (UK gal/litres)	1.54 UK gal (7 lt)	1.14 UK gal (5.2 lt)	0.79 UK gal (RWD Version) / 0.88 UK gal (AWD Version) 3.6 lt (RWD Version) / 4 lt (AWD Version)
Hydraulic brake circuit (UK gal/litres)	0.20 UK gal (0.9 lt)	0.20 UK gal (0.9 lt)	0.20 UK gal (0.9 lt)
Windscreen washer fluid reservoir (UK gal/litres)	0.92 UK gal (4.2 lt)	0.92 UK gal (4.2 lt)	0.92 UK gal (4.2 lt)
ZF 8HP75 automatic transmission, 2.9 V6 RWD engine (UK gal/litres)	2 UK gal (9.11 lt)	-	-
Automatic transmission, 2.2 JTD 180 HP RWD engine (UK gal/litres)	-	2.07 UK gal (RWD Version) / 2.06 UK gal (AWD Version) 9.4 lt (RWD Version) / 9.3 lt (AWD Version)	-

(*) 180 HP LOW CO_2 / 210 HP

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

	2.9 V6 Engine	2.0 T4 MAir engine	2.2 JTD engine
Automatic transmission, 2.2 JTD 180 HP RWD engine (UK gal/litres)	-	-	2.02 UK gal (9.2 lt)
Automatic transmission, 2.2 JTD 210 HP AWD engine (UK gal/litres)	-	-	2.0 UK gal (9.1 lt)
GETRAG G217 manual transmission (UK gal/litres)	-	-	0.31 UK gal (1.4 lt)
Manual transmission ZF S6-53 (UK gal/litres)	0.40 UK gal (1.8 lt)	-	-
Differentials and reduction gears RDU 230-TV (UK gal/litres)	Main body: 0.18 UK gal (0.8 lt) Left TV: 0.11 UK gal (0.5 lt) Right TV: 0.13 UK gal (0.6 lt)	-	-
RDU 230-LSD differential (UK gal/litres)	-	0.20 UK gal (0.9 lt)	0.20 UK gal (0.9 lt)
RDU 210-eLSD differential (if present) (UK gal/litres)	-	0.31 UK gal (1.4 lt)	0.31 UK gal (1.4 lt)
RDU 210/215-LSD differential (UK gal/litres)	-	0.24 UK gal (1.1 lt)	0.24 UK gal (1.1 lt)
AWD System FAD transfer case (UK gal/litres)	-	0.11 UK gal (0.5 lt)	0.11 UK gal (0.5 lt)
AWD System TRANSFER CASE (UK gal/litres)	-	0.15 UK gal (0.7 lt)	0.15 UK gal (0.7 lt)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS

Your car is equipped with an engine oil that has been thoroughly developed and tested in order to meet the requirements of the Scheduled Servicing Plan. Constant use of the prescribed lubricants guarantees the fuel consumption and emission specifications. Lubricant quality is crucial for engine operation and duration.

86)

PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

ENGINE LUBRICATION

Use	Features	Specification	Original fluids and lubricants	Replacement interval
Lubricant for petrol engines 2.9 V6	**SAE 0W-40** ACEA A3/B4 API SN	9.55535-Z2	SELENIA DIGITEK Contractual Technical Reference No. F155.G15	According to Scheduled Service Plan
Lubricant for petrol engines 2.0 T4 MAir	**SAE 0W-30** ACEA C2	9.55535-GS1	SELENIA DIGITEK P.E. Contractual Technical Reference N° F020.B12	According to Scheduled Service Plan
Lubricant for diesel engines 2.2 JTD	**SAE 0W-20** ACEA C2	9.55535-DSX	SELENIA W.R. FORWARD 0W-20 Contractual Technical Reference No. F013.K15	According to Scheduled Service Plan

If lubricants conforming to the specific request are not available, products that meet the indicated specifications can be used to top up; in this case optimal performance of the engine is not guaranteed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Use	Features	Specification	Original fluids and lubricants	Apps
Lubricants and greases for drive transmission	ATF Synthetic lubricant	9.55550-AV5	TUTELA TRANSMISSION AS 8 Contractual Technical Reference No. F139.I11	Automatic transmission
	SAE 70W API GL-4 synthetic lubricant	9.55550-MZ7	TUTELA TRANSMISSION GEARSYNTH LV Contractual Technical Reference No. F055.N15	Manual transmission GETRAG G217 / 2.2 JTD engine
	SAE 75W-140 API GL-4 synthetic lubricant	9.55550-MZ8	TUTELA TRANSMISSION GEARSYNTH Contractual Technical Reference No. F056.N15	Manual transmission ZF S6-53 / 2.9 V6 engine
	SAE 75W-85 API GL-5 synthetic lubricant	9.55550-DA8	TUTELA TRANSMISSION AXLE-DRIVE Contractual Technical Reference No. F058.N15	Differential and reduction units RDU 230-TV / 2.9 V6 engine
	SAE 75W-85 synthetic lubricant	9.55550-DA9	TUTELA TRANSMISSION LS AXLE FLUID Contractual Technical Reference No. F059.N15	Differential RDU 230-LSD RDU 210-eLSD RDU 210/215 -LSD / 2.2 JTD engine
	SAE 75W-80 APL GL-5 synthetic lubricant	9.55550-DA10	TUTELA TRANSMISSION HYPOIDE GEAR OIL Contractual Technical Reference No. F060.N15	AWD System FAD transfer case
	SAE 75W synthetic lubricant	9.55550-DA11	TUTELA TRANSMISSION TRANSFER CASE Contractual Technical Reference No. F061.N15	AWD System TRANSFER CASE

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Use	Features	Specification	Original fluids and lubricants	Apps
Lubricants and greases for drive transmission	NLGI 0-1 grease for constant velocity joints with low friction coefficient	9.55580-GRAS II	TUTELA STAR 700 Contractual Technical Reference No. F701.C07	Differential side constant velocity joints
	NLGI 1-2 molybdenum disulphide grease for high temperatures	9.55580-GRAS II	TUTELA ALL STAR Contractual Technical Reference No. F702.G07	Wheel side constant velocity joints
Brake fluid	DOT 4	9.55597	TUTELA BRAKE FLUID EXTREME HT Contractual Technical Reference No. F001.N15	Hydraulic brakes and clutch controls
Protective agent for radiators	CUNA NC 956–16 ASTMD3306	9.55523	PARAFLU UP Contractual Technical Reference No. F101.M01	Use rate 50% Not mixable with different formulation products. (*)
Windscreen washer fluid	CUNA NC 956-11	9.55522	PETRONAS DURANCE SC 35 Contractual Technical Reference No. F001.D16	To be used diluted or undiluted in windscreen washer/wiper systems
Diesel fuel additive	Antifreeze additive for diesel fuel for diesel engine protection		TUTELA DIESEL ART Contractual Technical Reference No. F601.L06	To be mixed with diesel fuel (25 cc per 10 litres)
HVAC	R1234yf or R134yf (depending on the market)			

(*) When the vehicle is used in particularly harsh weather conditions, we recommend using a 60% mixture of PARAFLU UP and 40% demineralised water.

IMPORTANT

86) *The use of products with different specifications than those indicated above could cause damage to the engine that is not covered by the warranty.*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PERFORMANCE

Top performance after the initial period of vehicle usage.

Versions	Maximum speed mph (km/h)	Acceleration from 0-62 mph sec. (0-100 km/h sec.)
2.9 V6 Engine	191 mph (307 km/h)	3.9
2.0 T4 MAir 200 HP engine automatic transmission	146 mph (235 km/h)	6.7
2.0 T4 MAir 280 HP engine automatic transmission	149 mph (240 km/h)	5.2
2.2 JTD 136 HP engine manual transmission	130 mph (210 km/h)	9.2
2.2 JTD 136 HP engine manual transmission(*)	130 mph (210 km/h)	9.2
2.2 JTD 150 HP engine manual transmission	137 mph (220 km/h)	8.4
2.2 JTD 150 HP engine manual transmission(*)	137 mph (220 km/h)	8.4
2.2 JTD 180 HP engine manual transmission	143 mph (230 km/h)	7.2
2.2 JTD 180 HP engine manual transmission (*)	143 mph (230 km/h)	7.2
2.2 JTD 136 HP engine automatic transmission	130 mph (210 km/h)	8.9
2.2 JTD 136 HP engine automatic transmission (*)	130 mph (210 km/h)	8.9
2.2 JTD 150 HP engine automatic transmission	137 mph (220 km/h)	8.1
2.2 JTD 150 HP engine automatic transmission (*)	137 mph (220 km/h)	8.1
2.2 JTD 180 HP engine automatic transmission	143 mph (230 km/h)	6.8
2.2 JTD 180 HP engine automatic transmission (*)	143 mph (230 km/h)	6.8
2.2 JTD 180 HP engine automatic transmission LOW CO_2	143 mph (230 km/h)	7.2
2.2 JTD 210 HP engine automatic transmission	146 mph (235 km/h)	6.8

(*) Version for specific markets.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FUEL CONSUMPTION

FUEL CONSUMPTION

The fuel consumption figures given in the table below are determined on the basis of the type-approval tests laid down by specific European Directives.

The following procedures are used to measure the fuel consumption:

❒ *urban cycle*: cold starting followed by driving that simulates urban use of the vehicle;

❒ *extra-urban cycle*: followed by driving simulating extra-urban use of the car with frequent accelerating in all gears, speed varies between 0 and 75 mph (120 km/h);

❒ *combined fuel consumption*: calculated with a weighting of approximately 37% of the urban cycle and 63% of the extra-urban cycle.

IMPORTANT The type of route, traffic conditions, weather conditions, driving style, general condition of the car, trim level/equipment/accessories, use of the climate control system, car load, presence of roof racks and other situations that adversely affect the aerodynamics or wind resistance lead to different fuel consumption values than those measured.

IMPORTANT The fuel consumption will get more regular only after having driven the first 1,850 mi (3,000 km).

FUEL CONSUMPTION ACCORDING TO THE CURRENT EUROPEAN DIRECTIVE (UK gal/62 mi – litres/100 km)

Versions	Urban	Extra-urban	Combined
2.9 V6 engine manual transmission	2.82 UK gal (12.8 lt)	1.32 UK gal (6.0 lt)	1.87 UK gal (8.5 lt)
2.9 V6 engine automatic transmission	2.73 UK gal (12.4 lt)	1.25 UK gal (5.7 lt)	1.80 UK gal (8.2 lt)
2.0 T4 MAir 200 HP engine automatic transmission	1.85 UK gal (8.4 lt)	1.01 UK gal (4.6 lt)	1.30 UK gal (6.0 lt)
2.0 T4 MAir 280 HP engine automatic transmission	1.96 UK gal (8.9 lt)	1.08 UK gal (4.9 lt)	1.41 UK gal (6.4 lt)
2.2 JTD 136 HP engine manual transmission	1.17 UK gal (5.3 lt)	0.77 UK gal (3.5 lt)	0.92 UK gal (4.2 lt)
2.2 JTD 136 HP engine manual transmission(*)	1.12 UK gal (5.1 lt)	0.73 UK gal (3.3 lt)	0.88 UK gal (4.0 lt)
2.2 JTD 150 HP engine manual transmission	1.17 UK gal (5.3 lt)	0.77 UK gal (3.5 lt)	0.92 UK gal (4.2 lt)
2.2 JTD 150 HP engine manual transmission(*)	1.12 UK gal (5.1 lt)	0.73 UK gal (3.3 lt)	0.88 UK gal (4.0 lt)
2.2 JTD 180 HP engine manual transmission	1.17 UK gal (5.3 lt)	0.77 UK gal (3.5 lt)	0.92 UK gal (4.2 lt)

(*) Version for specific markets.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Versions	Urban	Extra-urban	Combined
2.2 JTD 180 HP engine manual transmission (*)	1.12 UK gal (5.1 lt)	0.73 UK gal (3.3 lt)	0.88 UK gal (4.0 lt)
2.2 JTD 136 HP engine automatic transmission	1.17 UK gal (5.3 lt)	0.77 UK gal (3.5 lt)	0.92 UK gal (4.2 lt)
2.2 JTD 136 HP engine automatic transmission (*)	1.12 UK gal (5.1 lt)	0.73 UK gal (3.3 lt)	0.88 UK gal (4.0 lt)
2.2 JTD 150 HP engine automatic transmission	1.17 UK gal (5.3 lt)	0.77 UK gal (3.5 lt)	0.92 UK gal (4.2 lt)
2.2 JTD 150 HP engine automatic transmission (*)	1.12 UK gal (5.1 lt)	0.73 UK gal (3.3 lt)	0.88 UK gal (4.0 lt)
2.2 JTD 180 HP engine automatic transmission	1.17 UK gal (5.3 lt)	0.77 UK gal (3.5 lt)	0.92 UK gal (4.2 lt)
2.2 JTD 180 HP engine automatic transmission (*)	1.12 UK gal (5.1 lt)	0.75 UK gal (3.4 lt)	0.88 UK gal (4.0 lt)
2.2 JTD 180 HP engine automatic transmission LOW CO_2	1.06 UK gal (4.8 lt)	0.70 UK gal (3.2 lt)	0.84 UK gal (3.8 lt)
2.2 JTD 210 HP engine automatic transmission	1.28 UK gal (5.8 lt)	0.88 UK gal (4.0 lt)	1.03 UK gal (4.7 lt)

(*) Version for specific markets.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CO2 EMISSIONS

The CO_2 emission levels given in the following table refer to combined consumption.

Versions	CO EMISSIONS$_2$ ACCORDING TO THE EUROPEAN DIRECTIVE IN FORCE (g/km)
2.9 V6 engine manual transmission	198
2.9 V6 engine automatic transmission	189
2.0 T4 MAir 200 HP engine automatic transmission	138
2.0 T4 MAir 280 HP engine automatic transmission	148
2.2 JTD 136 HP engine manual transmission	109
2.2 JTD 136 HP engine manual transmission(*)	105
2.2 JTD 150 HP engine manual transmission	109
2.2 JTD 150 HP engine manual transmission(*)	105
2.2 JTD 180 HP engine manual transmission	109
2.2 JTD 180 HP engine manual transmission(*)	105
2.2 JTD 136 HP engine automatic transmission	109
2.2 JTD 136 HP engine automatic transmission (*)	105
2.2 JTD 150 HP engine automatic transmission	109
2.2 JTD 150 HP engine automatic transmission (*)	105
2.2 JTD 180 HP engine automatic transmission	109
2.2 JTD 180 HP engine automatic transmission(*)	105
2.2 JTD 180 HP engine automatic transmission LOW CO_2	99
2.2 JTD 210 HP engine automatic transmission	122

(*) Version for specific markets.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PRESCRIPTIONS FOR HANDLING THE VEHICLE AT THE END OF ITS LIFE

(for markets where provided)

For years, Alfa Romeo S.p.A. has pursued a global commitment to protect and respect the environment by continually improving its production processes and developing increasingly "eco-compatible" products. To grant customers the best possible service in terms of respecting environmental laws and in response to European Directive 2000/53/EC governing vehicles at the end of their life, Alfa Romeo S.p.A. is offering its customers the chance to hand over their car at the end of its life without incurring any additional costs. The European Directive sets out that when the vehicle is handed over the last keeper or owner should not incur any expenses as a result of it having a zero or negative market value.

To hand your car over at the end of its life without extra cost, contact one of our dealerships if you are purchasing another car or an Alfa Romeo S.p.A.-authorised collection and scrapping centre. These centres have been carefully chosen to offer high quality service for the collection, treatment and recycling of vehicles at their end of life, respecting the surrounding environment.

You can find further information on these collection and scrapping centres either from an Alfa Romeo S.p.A. dealership or by calling the number in the Warranty Booklet or by consulting the Alfa Romeo S.p.A. website.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ELECTRONIC KEY (versions with Keyless Start system)

Continental

Interior

Continental Automotive GmbH, Siemensstraße 12, 93055 Regensburg, Germany

Sven Kubeil
I BS RD CFRF VM
Phone: +49-941-790-90292
Fax: +49-941-79099-90292
Sven.Kubeil@continental-corporation.com

Date: 22.10.2015 | Your message dated: | Our reference: | Your reference:

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany

Product type designation: ALFA434
Intended use: Radio frequency transmitter used in vehicle locking/unlocking systems

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to Art. 3(1)(a): *Applied standard(s):* EN 60950-1:2006 + A2:2013

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to Art. 3(1)(b): *Applied standard(s):* EN 301 489-1: V1.9.2 (2011-09), EN 301 489-3: V1.6.1 (2013-08)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to Art. 3(2): *Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220 -1: V2.4.1 (2012-05), EN 300 220 -2: V2.4.1 (2012-05)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product: CE

Continental Automotive GmbH
Regensburg, 22.10.2015

Andreas Wolf
Executive Vice President
Body & Security

Norbert Müller
Director RD
Body & Security

1/1

Continental Automotive GmbH | Siemensstraße 12, 93055 Regensburg | P.O. Box: 10 09 43 | 93009 Regensburg
www.continental-corporation.com
Registered office: Regensburg | Commercial Court: Amtsgericht Hanover
HRB: 204211 | VAT ID No.: DE 814600063
Chairman of the Supervisory Board: Helmut Matschi
Managing Board: Elmar Degenhart, Ralf Cramer
Account at: Deutsche Bank AG, Frankfurt | BIC/SWIFT: DEUTDEFFXXX | IBAN: DE07 5007 0010 0206 0100 00

260

10196S0003EM

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Country	
Czech Republic	**Continental Automotive AG** tímto prohlašuje, že tento **Fobik** je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Denmark	Undertegnede **Continental Automotive AG** erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr **Fobik** overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Germany	Hiermit erklärt **Continental Automotive AG**, dass sich das Gerät **Fobik** in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Estonia	Käesolevaga kinnitab **Continental Automotive AG**, seadme **Fobik** vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
England	Hereby, **Continental Automotive AG**, declares that this **Fobik** is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Spain	Por medio de la presente **Continental Automotive AG** declara que el **Fobik** cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Greece	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ **Continental Automotive AG** ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ **Fobik** ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
France	Par la présente **Continental Automotive AG** déclare que l'appareil **Fobik** est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Italy	Con la presente **Continental Automotive AG** dichiara che questo **Fobik** è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latvia	Ar šo **Continental Automotive AG** deklarē, ka **Fobik** atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lithuania	Šiuo **Continental Automotive AG** deklaruoja, kad šis **Fobik** atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Netherlands	Hierbij verklaart **Continental Automotive AG** dat het toestel **Fobik** in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Malta	Hawnhekk, **Continental Automotive AG**, jiddikjara li dan **Fobik** jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Country	
Hungary	Alulírott, **Continental Automotive AG** nyilatkozom, hogy a **Fobik** megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
Poland	Niniejszym **Continental Automotive AG** oświadcza, że **Fobik** jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Portugal	**Continental Automotive AG** declara que este **Fobik** está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovenia	**Continental Automotive AG** izjavlja, da je ta **Fobik** v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovakia	**Continental Automotive AG** týmto vyhlasuje, že **Fobik** spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Finland	**Continental Automotive AG** vakuuttaa täten että **Fobik** tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Sweden	Härmed intygar **Continental Automotive AG** att denna **Fobik** står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Island	Hér með lýsir **Continental Automotive AG** yfir því að **Fobik** er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Norway	**Continental Automotive AG** erklærer herved at utstyret **Fobik** er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OFFICIAL TYPE APPROVALS FOR SPECIFIC MARKETS

Country	FOBIK system type approval code
Benin	AGREE PAR L'ATRPT BENIN Numéro d'agrément : MR nnnn ANRT nnnn Date d'agrément : nnnnnn
Botswana	BOCRA REGISTERED NO: nnnnnn
Ghana	NCA APPROVED: 3R8-8M-7DF-28D
Malaysia	MCMC
Israel	שם הדגם **ALFA434** שם היצרן וכתובתו Continental Automotive GmbH Siemensstrasse 12 93055 Regensburg Germany
South Korea	MSIP-CRM-TAL-ALFA434 Continental Automotive GmbH FOBIK ALFA434 이 기기는 가정용(B급) 전자파적합기기로서 주로 가정에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 하며, 모든 지역에서 사용할 수 있습니다.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Country	FOBIK system type approval code
Moldavia	
Nigeria	Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission
Philippines	ESD-1612654C
Morocco	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 11026 ANRT 2015 Date d'agrément: 03/11/2015
Qatar	reg. No.: nnnnn Importer No.: nnnnn ictQATAR Type Approval reg. No.: nnnnnn Importer No: xxxxxxxxx
Taiwan	
South Africa	Continental M3N-82135300 TA-2015/1882

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Country	FOBIK system type approval code
Vietnam	Name: Continental Automotive GmbH Code: C0166061115AF04A2

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Continental

Interior

Continental Automotive GmbH, Siemensstraße 12, 93055 Regensburg, Germany

Sven Kubeil
I BS RD CFRF WM
Phone: +49-941-790-90292
Fax: +49-941-79099-90292
Sven.Kubeil@continental-corporation.com

Date	Your message dated	Our reference	Your reference
14.09.2015			

Declaration of Conformity

We, the undersigned, declare, that

the model M3N-82135300 was modified to model AlfaRFHM1.
These modifications were necessary to adapt the model to another car line system.

Modifications:
Other digital input/output circuitry,
using a Start Switch Button instead of a Keyless Ignition Node module,
using a low radio frequency antenna coil instead of using a Keyless Ignition Node module with antenna coil, under using the same amount of low radio frequency antennas for the other passive entry and start functions.

The communication protocol was not modified.

The modifications do not influence the radio frequency characteristics of the product.

Continental Automotive GmbH
Regensburg, 14.09.2015

Andreas Wolf
Executive Vice President
Body & Security

Norbert Müller
Director RD
Body & Security

1/1

Continental Automotive GmbH | Siemensstraße 12, 93055 Regensburg | P.O. Box: 10 09 43 | 93009 Regensburg
www.continental-corporation.com
Registered office: Hanover | Registered Court: Amtsgericht Hanover
HRB: 59424 | VAT ID No.: DE 814950663
Chairman of the Supervisory Board: Helmut Matschi
Directors: Georg Sistermanns, Harald Stuhlmann
Account at: Deutsche Bank AG, Frankfurt | BIC/SWIFT: DEUTDEFFXXX | IBAN: DE07 5007 0010 0096 5103 00

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Continental

Interior

Continental Automotive GmbH, Siemensstraße 12, 93055 Regensburg, Germany

Sven Kubeil
I BS RD CFRF WM
Phone: +49-941-790-90292
Fax: +49-941-79099-90292
Sven.Kubeil@continental-corporation.com

Date	Your message dated	Our reference	Your reference
14.09.2015			

Declaration of Conformity

We, the undersigned, declare, that

the model AlfaRFHM1 was modified to model AlfaRFHM2.
These modifications were necessary to create an additional variant of the product.

Modifications:
Using an internal radio frequency receiving antenna for the radio frequency receiver in the 434 MHz range, instead of a connection to an external radio frequency antenna.

The communication protocol was not modified.

The modifications do not influence the radio frequency characteristics of the product.

Continental Automotive GmbH
Regensburg, 14.09.2015

Andreas Wolf
Executive Vice President
Body & Security

Norbert Müller
Director RD
Body & Security

1/1

Continental Automotive GmbH | Siemensstraße 12, 93055 Regensburg | P.O. Box: 10 09 43 | 93009 Regensburg
www.continental-corporation.com
Registered office: Hanover | Registered Court: Amtsgericht Hanover
HRB: 59424 | VAT ID No.: DE 814550063
Chairman of the Supervisory Board: Helmut Matschi
Directors: Georg Sielermann, Harald Blutmann
Account at: Deutsche Bank AG, Frankfurt | BIC/SWIFT: DEUTDEFFXXX | IBAN: DE07 5007 0010 0096 5103 00

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Continental

Interior

Continental Automotive GmbH, Siemensstraße 12, 93055 Regensburg, Germany

Sven Kubeil
I BS RD CFRF WM
Phone: +49-941-790-90292
Fax: +49-941-79099-90292
Sven.Kubeil@continental-corporation.com

Date	Your message dated	Our reference	Your reference
22.10.2015			

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany

Product type designation: ALFA434
Intended use: Radio frequency transmitter used in vehicle locking/unlocking systems

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to Art. 3(1)(a): *Applied standard(s):* EN 60950-1:2006 + A2:2013

Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to Art. 3(1)(b): *Applied standard(s):* EN 301 489 -1: V1.9.2 (2011-09)
EN 301 489 -3: V1.6.1 (2013-08)

Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to Art. 3(2): *Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220 -1: V2.4.1 (2012-05)
EN 300 220 -2: V2.4.1 (2012-05)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product: CE

Continental Automotive GmbH
Regensburg, 22.10.2015

Andreas Wolf
Executive Vice President
Body & Security

Norbert Müller
Director RD
Body & Security

1/1

Continental Automotive GmbH | Siemensstraße 12, 93055 Regensburg | P.O. Box 10 09 43 | 93009 Regensburg
www.continental-corporation.com
Registered office: Hanover | Registered Court: Amtsgericht Hanover
HRB: 59424 | VAT ID No.: DE 814950663
Chairman of the Supervisory Board: Helmut Matschi
Directors: Georg Sippermann, Harald Stuhlmann
Account at: Deutsche Bank AG, Frankfurt | BIC/SWIFT: DEUTDEFFXXX | IBAN: DE07 5007 0010 0096 5103 00

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Country	
Czech Republic	**Continental Automotive AG** tímto prohlašuje, že tento **Radio Transmitter** je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Denmark	Undertegnede **Continental Automotive AG** erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr **Radio Transmitter** overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Germany	Hiermit erklärt **Continental Automotive AG**, dass sich das Gerät **Radio Transmitter** in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Estonia	Käesolevaga kinnitab **Continental Automotive AG**, seadme **Radio Transmitter** vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
England	Hereby, **Continental Automotive AG**, declares that this **Radio Transmitter** is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Spain	Por medio de la presente **Continental Automotive AG** declara que el **Radio Transmitter** cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Greece	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ **Continental Automotive AG** ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ **Radio Transmitter** ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
France	Par la présente **Continental Automotive AG** déclare que l'appareil **Radio Transmitter** est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Italy	Con la presente **Continental Automotive AG** dichiara che questo **Radio Transmitter** è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latvia	Ar šo **Continental Automotive AG** deklarē, ka **Radio Transmitter** atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lithuania	Šiuo **Continental Automotive AG** deklaruoja, kad šis **Radio Transmitter** atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Netherlands	Hierbij verklaart **Continental Automotive AG** dat het toestel **Radio Transmitter** in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Malta	Hawnhekk, **Continental Automotive AG**, jiddikjara li dan **Radio Transmitter** jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Country	
Hungary	Alulírott, **Continental Automotive AG** nyilatkozom, hogy a **Radio Transmitter** megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
Poland	Niniejszym **Continental Automotive AG** oświadcza, że **Radio Transmitter** jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Portugal	**Continental Automotive AG** declara que este **Radio Transmitter** está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovenia	**Continental Automotive AG** izjavlja, da je ta **Radio Transmitter** v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovakia	**Continental Automotive AG** týmto vyhlasuje, že **Radio Transmitter** spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Finland	**Continental Automotive AG** vakuuttaa täten että **Radio Transmitter** tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Sweden	Härmed intygar **Continental Automotive AG** att denna **Radio Transmitter** står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Island	Hér með lýsir **Continental Automotive AG** yfir því að **Radio Transmitter** er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Norway	**Continental Automotive AG** erklærer herved at utstyret **Radio Transmitter** er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OFFICIAL TYPE APPROVALS FOR SPECIFIC MARKETS

Country	RFHM system type approval code
Benin	AGREE PAR L'ATRPT BENIN Numéro d'agrément : MR nnnn ANRT nnnn Date d'agrément : nnnnnn
Botswana	BOCRA REGISTERED NO: nnnnnn
Ghana	NCA APPROVED: 3R8-8M-7DF-301 NCA/TA/10/2010
Malaysia	MCMC
Israel	שם הדגם **ALFARFHM1** שם היצרן וכתובתו Continental Automotive GmbH Siemensstrasse 12 93055 Regensburg Germany
South Korea	MSIP-RRM-TAL-S180222030 Continental Automotive GmbH RFHM S180222030 이 기기는 가정용(B급) 전자파적합기기로서, 주로 가정에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 하며, 모든 지역에서 사용할 수 있습니다.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Country	RFHM system type approval code
Moldavia	11124
Nigeria	Connection and use of this communication equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission
Philippines	ESD-1612702C
Morocco	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Transmitter : Numéro d'agrément : MR 11317 ANRT 2015 Date d'agrément : 21/01/2016 Receiver : Numéro d'agrément : MR 5833 ANRT 2010 Date d'agrément : 08/10/2010
Qatar	reg. No.: R-3189 Importer No.: nnnnn ictQATAR Type Approval reg. No.: nnnnnn Importer No: xxxxxxxxx
Taiwan	
South Africa	Continental Automotive GmbH M3N-82135300 TA-2012/1369 ICASA

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Country	RFHM system type approval code
Vietnam	Name: Continental Automotive GmbH Code: C0167061115AF04A2

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)

Continental

Interior

Continental Automotive GmbH, Siemensstr. 12, D-93055 Regensburg

Josef Lohr
I BS RD CFRF WM
Phone +49 941 790-8942
Fax +49 941 790-8942
Josef.lohr@continental-corporation.com

Date	Your message (date)	Our reference	Your reference
March 30, 2015		TIS-01	

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany
Product type designation: TIS-01
Intended use: Tire Pressure Monitoring Sensor

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to Art. 3(1)(a):	*Applied standard(s):* EN 60950-1:2006 + A11:2009 + A1:2010 + A12:2011+ A2:2013
Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to Art. 3(1)(b):	*Applied standard(s):* EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2 (2011-09); EN 301 489-3 V1.6.1 (2013-08)
Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to Art. 3(2):	*Applied standard(s):* EN 300 220-1 V2.4.1 (2012-05); EN 300 220-2 V2.4.1 (2012-05)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product: CE

Continental Automotive GmbH
Regensburg, 2015-03-30

Andreas Wolf
Executive Vice President
Body &Security

Norbert Müller
Director RD
Body & Security

1/1

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Country	
Czech Republic	**Continental Automotive AG** tímto prohlašuje, že tento **TPMS System** je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Denmark	Undertegnede **Continental Automotive AG** erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr **TPMS System** overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Germany	Hiermit erklärt **Continental Automotive AG**, dass sich das Gerät **TPMS System** in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Estonia	Käesolevaga kinnitab **Continental Automotive AG**, seadme **TPMS System** vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
England	Hereby, **Continental Automotive AG**, declares that this **TPMS System** is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Spain	Por medio de la presente **Continental Automotive AG** declara que el **TPMS System** cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Greece	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ **Continental Automotive AG** ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ **TPMS System** ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
France	Par la présente **Continental Automotive AG** déclare que l'appareil **TPMS System** est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Italy	Con la presente **Continental Automotive AG** dichiara che questo **TPMS System** è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latvia	Ar šo **Continental Automotive AG** deklarē, ka **TPMS System** atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lithuania	Šiuo **Continental Automotive AG** deklaruoja, kad šis **TPMS System** atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Netherlands	Hierbij verklaart **Continental Automotive AG** dat het toestel **TPMS System** in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Malta	Hawnhekk, **Continental Automotive AG**, jiddikjara li dan **TPMS System** jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Country	
Hungary	Alulírott, **Continental Automotive AG** nyilatkozom, hogy a **TPMS System** megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
Poland	Niniejszym **Continental Automotive AG** oświadcza, że **TPMS System** jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Portugal	**Continental Automotive AG** declara que este **TPMS System** está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovenia	**Continental Automotive AG** izjavlja, da je ta **TPMS System** v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovakia	**Continental Automotive AG** týmto vyhlasuje, že **TPMS System** spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Finland	**Continental Automotive AG** vakuuttaa täten että **TPMS System** tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Sweden	Härmed intygar **Continental Automotive AG** att denna **TPMS System** står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Island	Hér með lýsir **Continental Automotive AG** yfir því að **TPMS System** er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Norway	**Continental Automotive AG** erklærer herved at utstyret **TPMS System** er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Continental

Rev. 19.05.2015
Th. Heselberger

Excerpt Label Information Taiwan

Labeling:
NCC : National Communications Commission
Size of Logo/marking: No detailed regulation
Owner manual: warning statement (without the exclamation mark)

owner manual entry:

低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法

第十二條
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

owner manual entry (translation):

Control regulations for electromagnetic radiation produced by electrical appliances of low power:

Paragraph 12 Without official permission companies, shops or users are not allowed to change the approved type of radio frequency electrical appliances of low power regarding frequency, power as well as original capacity/function.

Paragraph 14 Using radio frequency electrical appliances of low power may neither harm air safety nor interfere with legitimately approved telecommunication equipments. If thereby interference occurs, these electrical appliances must be immediately stopped to run. They may not be used again until interference has been eliminated. Legitimately approved telecommunication equipments
mentioned above refer to the installations of raido communication under the Telecommunications Law. Radio frequency electrical appliances of low power must be insensitive to interference resulted from approved telecommunication equipments and electromagnetic radiation produced by electrical equipments as well as scientific and medical apparatus.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PETRONAS
SELENIA

It's in the heart of your engine.

Ask your mechanic for PETRONAS SELENIA

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your car has chosen PETRONAS Selenia

*The engine of your car was made with **PETRONAS Selenia**, the range of engine oils that satisfies the most advanced international specifications. Subject to specific tests and boasting outstanding technical characteristics, **PETRONAS Selenia** is a lubricant designed to equip your engine with **reliable, winning performance standards"***

The quality of PETRONAS Selenia is divided into a range of technologically advanced products:

SELENIA WR FORWARD 0W-30/0W-20
Fully synthetic, latest generation lubricant specifically formulated for EURO 6 diesel engines. Its fully synthetic formula and 0W-30 viscosity grade guarantee excellent performance in terms of fuel economy for diesel engines equipped with high efficiency turbo-charger. PETRONAS Selenia Forward also features excellent resistance to oxidation, thus maintaining its technical characteristics and promoting maximum engine performance throughout the entire oil-change interval.

SELENIA DIGITEK P.E. 0W-30
Is the fully synthetic lubricant created for the most modern petrol engines. Its special viscosity grade and its specific formulation enhance the fuel economy features and, consequently the reduction of CO2 emissions. Especially created for TwinAir two-cylinder engines, it ensures maximum engine protection even under high mechanical stress due to mainly city use.

SELENIA MULTIPOWER C3
Is a high performance synthetic lubricant designed for petrol and diesel engines requiring products able to reduce ash deposits to the absolute minimum. It provides increased protection against wear and tear and has excellent fuel economy characteristics. It protects the particle filter (DPF) in diesel engines.

SELENIA SPORT POWER
Is a fully synthetic lubricant designed to enhance the sporting characteristics of direct injection petrol engines (GDI).
It maximizes sporting performances while maintaining complete engine protection, even under the most severe conditions of use.

The PETRONAS Selenia range is completed with Selenia StAR Pure Energy, Selenia StAR, Selenia WR Pure Energy, Selenia Sport, and Selenia Racing.
For further information concerning PETRONAS Selenia products, consult the website: www.pli-petronas.com

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTE

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

INDEX

"Alfa DNA" system 148
ABS (system) 102
Accessories purchased by the owner 3
Active aerodynamics 63
Active Cruise Control 157
Active safety systems 102
Additional heater 53
AFS function 40
Air conditioner parameters display . . .49
Airbag
  Front airbags 131
  Side airbags 135
Airbag (SRS supplementary restraint system) 131
Alarm system 24
Alfa Active Suspension (AAS) 151
ATV (Alfa™ Active Torque Vectoring) system 104
Automatic dual-zone climate control system 48
Automatic transmission 143
Automatic transmission gear lever unlocking 202
Battery 224
Battery recharging 225
Bodywork (cleaning and maintenance) 236
Bonnet 56
Brakes 249
  brake fluid level 223
Broken-down vehicle towing 203
BSM (Blind Spot Monitoring) 105
Carrying children safely 119
Checking levels 218
Child protection systems 119
Child safety device 28
Climate control system 47
CO2 emissions 269
Control panel and on-board instruments 66
Courtesy lights
  Luggage compartment courtesy lights 44
Courtesy mirror light (bulb replacement) 187
Cruise Control 155
Cup/can holder 60
Daytime running lights (DRL) 39
Dimensions 257
Dipped headlights 38
Dipped headlights (changing a bulb) 185
Direction indicators 41
Direction indicators (changing a bulb) 186
Display 70
Door light 43
Doors 25
DPF (particulate filter) 62
Driving assistance systems 105
Driving modes 148
DTC (system) 102
Dusk sensor 38
Electric parking brake 140
Electric steering wheel heating 36
Electric sunroof 55
Electric windows 54
Emergency refuelling 201
Emergency starting 198
Engine 244
  engine coolant level 223
Engine codes - bodywork versions 243
Engine compartment 218
Engine compartment (washing) 237
Engine Immobilizer (system) 23
Engine oil
  consumption 222
  level check 222
Engine oil temperature gauge 69
Engine overheating 201
Environmental protection systems . . .62

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EOBD system 99
ESC (Electronic Stability Control) system 102
External lights 38
Fire extinguisher 61
Fluids and lubricants 263
Fog lights (bulb replacement) 187
Forward Collision Warning (system) 107
Front ceiling light 42
Front fog lights 39
Front light cluster with main beam/dipped beam halogen headlights (bulb replacement) . . .185
Front light cluster with main beam/dipped beam Xenon gas discharge headlights (bulb replacement). 187
Front mobile spoiler (Alfa Active Aero) 63
Front seat electric heating 32
Front seats (electric adjustment) 31
Front seats (manual adjustments). . . .30
Fuel consumption 267
Fuel cut-off system 201
Fuel level gauge 69
Fuse boxes 190
Fuses (replacement) 189
Glove compartment 59
Glove compartment light 43
Glove compartment light (bulb replacement) 187
Hazard warning lights 182
Emergency braking 182
Headlight alignment adjustment 41
Headlight alignment corrector 41
Headlights (cleaning) 237
Headrests 34
HSA (Hill Start Assist) system 103
i-Size child restraint systems 125
Identification data 242
Ignition device 22
Installing electrical/electronic devices 3
Interior Ambient Lighting 43
Interior fittings 59
Interior lights 42
Interiors (cleaning) 238
ISOFIX child restraint system (installation) 123
Jump starting 199
Keys
electronic key 20
Lane Change 41
Lane Departure Warning System . . .169
Lifting the vehicle 233
Light bulbs
types of bulbs 183
Light switch 38
Luggage compartment 57
Luggage compartment light (bulb replacement) 188
Main beam headlights 40
Automatic main beam headlights . .40
Main beam headlights (changing a bulb) 185
Manual gearbox. 143
Occupant protection systems 114
Official type approvals 271
Paintwork
(cleaning and maintenance) 237
Park Sensors system 164
Parking lights 39
Passenger compartment air diffusers 47
Passive Entry (system) 25
PBA (Panic Brake Assist) system . . .103
Performance (top speed) 266
Power Lock (device) 28
Power Socket 60
Power supply 247
Prescriptions for handling the vehicle at the end of its life 270
Pretensioners 117
Load limiters 117
Prolonged vehicle inactivity 235

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radio transmitters and mobile phones 4
Rain sensor 45
RCP system 106
Rear Back-up Camera / Dynamic Gridlines 172
Rear ceiling light 44
Rear seats 32
Rear view mirrors 36
Reconfigurable TFT display 70
Refuelling 261
Refuelling procedure 174
Refuelling the vehicle 173
Replacing a bulb 182
Replacing an external bulb 185
Replacing an internal bulb. 187
Rev counter 69
Rims and tyres . . . . . .233 ,252
Rims and tyres provided 253
Roof rack/Ski rack 61
Saving fuel 175
SBA (Seat Belt Alert) 115
SBA (Seat Belt Alert) System 115
SBL function 41
Scheduled servicing 208
Scheduled servicing plan (2.2 JTD diesel engine versions) . .215
Scheduled servicing programme (2.9 V6 petrol engine versions) . . .209
Screen wiper/washer 45
Smart washing function 45
Seat belts 114
Seats 30
Service schedule (2.0 T4 MAir petrol engine versions). 212
Servicing procedures 226
Side bag 135
Side/tail lights 39
Snow chains 234
Speed Limiter. 154
Speedometer 69
Split folding rear seat 33
SRS (supplementary restraint system) 131
Start & Stop Evo 152
Starting the engine. 138
Starting with flat key battery 22
Steering 251
Steering lock 22
Steering wheel 35
Suggestions for driving 175
Sun visors 60
Suspension 250
Symbols 7
TC (Traction Control) system 103
TFT Display (3.5") 66
TFT Display (7"). 67
The keys 20
Tire Repair Kit. 195
Towing the vehicle 205
Towing trailers 178
TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System). 111
Transmission 248
Transporting animals 176
Transporting passengers 176
Tyres (inflation pressure) 255
Use of the Owner Handbook 5
Vehicle changes/alterations 3
Vehicle identification number 242
Warning lights and messages 76
Washer fluid for windscreen/headlights. 223
Weights 259
Wheels 252
(correct tyre reading) 252
correct reading of the rim code . . .253
Wheels and tyres 233
Window bag 135
Windows (cleaning) 237
Windscreen wiper 45
replacing blades. 228

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

FCA Italy S.p.A. - MOPAR - Technical Services - Service Engineering
Largo Senatore G. Agnelli, 3 - 10040 Volvera - Turin (Italy)
Print no. 603.93.005GB_WEB - 09/2016 - 1 Edition

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ALFA ROMEO GENUINE SPARE PARTS AND ACCESSORIES

PERFECT FOR YOUR VEHICLE, RIGHT DOWN TO THE SMALLEST DETAIL

The **Alfa Romeo Genuine Spare Parts and Accessories** follow the rigid component engineering and manufacturing specifications used in the assembly line to meet the technical specifications of your new Alfa Romeo and to enhance its style and performance. They undergo strict approval tests and **quality** controls to ensure they comply with **safety** and **environmental standards**.

All of the components on your new Alfa Romeo, from the smallest bulb to the most complex mechanical, electrical and electronic systems, are designed to work in harmony and guarantee you a comfortable and safe drive, in full respect for the environment. The Genuine Accessories fully enhance the style of your new vehicle.

Entrust **the experience and quality of Alfa Romeo Dealerships** to find the full range of Alfa Romeo Genuine Spare Parts and Accessories.

Find your nearest Dealership on **www.alfaromeo.com**

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ENGLISH

La meccanica delle emozioni

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine